



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

### Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

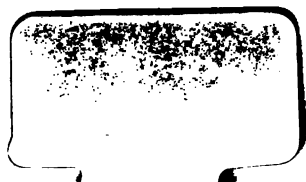
### About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>

HISTORICAL  
CLASSICAL

1800-1850  
1850-1900  
1900-1950  
1950-1999

# 228 f. 284











Royal School Series.

THE  
HISTORICAL READER.  
(ENGLISH HISTORY.)

---

*WITH MAPS, NOTES, AND VOCABULARIES.*



London:  
T. NELSON AND SONS, PATERNOSTER ROW.  
EDINBURGH; AND NEW YORK.

---

1880.





## P R E F A C E.

---

THIS book is intended to be used as a Supplementary Reader in schools in which History is taught as a class subject. As a book of History, the details it gives regarding great events and epochs will add much to the interest of the study. As a Reading-book, the specimens of standard authors which it contains will encourage a taste for good literature.

To make the book practically useful, it has been arranged in Three Parts, corresponding with the divisions of the Code. There have also been introduced Vocabularies, Explanatory Notes, and Sketch Maps, on the same plan as in the other volumes of the Royal School Series.



# CONTENTS.

*\*\* The Italics indicate Poetical Pieces.*

## PART I.

### FROM THE ROMAN INVASION TO THE NORMAN CONQUEST.

1. The Roman Conquest, ... ..	<i>Hume,</i> ... ..	9
2. <i>Boadicea,</i> ... ..	<i>Cowper,</i> ... ..	14
3. The English Conquest, ... ..	<i>Church,</i> ... ..	16
4. Christianity in England, ... ..	<i>Royal England,</i> ... ..	22
5. The Venerable Bede, ... ..	<i>Green,</i> ... ..	26
6. <i>Danish Sword Chant,</i> ... ..	<i>Motherwell,</i> ... ..	30
7. King Alfred and the Danes, ... ..	<i>Hume,</i> ... ..	33
8. <i>Harold's Oath,</i> ... ..	<i>Tennyson,</i> ... ..	38
9. The Last Old English King, ... ..	<i>Dickens,</i> ... ..	43
10. <i>The Battle of Hastings,</i> ... ..	<i>M'Dougall,</i> ... ..	47

## PART II.

### FROM THE NORMAN CONQUEST TO THE ACCESSION OF HENRY VII.

1. Hereward, the English Outlaw, ... ..	<i>Lingard,</i> ... ..	50
2. William Rufus and Anselm, ... ..	<i>Church,</i> ... ..	54
3. Death of Becket, ... ..	<i>Robertson,</i> ... ..	58
4. <i>Cœur de Lion at his Father's Bier,</i> ... ..	<i>Hemans,</i> ... ..	61
5. Richard I. in Palestine, ... ..	<i>Hume,</i> ... ..	65
6. Magna Carta, ... ..	<i>Stubbs,</i> ... ..	69
7. The Black Prince at Crécy, ... ..	<i>Stanley,</i> ... ..	74
8. Wat Tyler's Rising, ... ..	<i>Dickens,</i> ... ..	80

9. The Beginnings of English Commerce,	<i>Fyfe,</i>	... 84
10. The Pilgrims of the Tabard Inn, ...	<i>Collier,</i>	... 89
11. <i>The Field of Agincourt,</i> ...	<i>Drayton,</i>	... 95
12. Joan of Arc, ...	<i>Lingard,</i>	... 99
13. William Caxton, ...	<i>Fyfe,</i>	... 107
14. The End of the Wars of the Roses, ...	<i>Gairdner,</i>	... 111

## PART III.

FROM THE ACCESSION OF HENRY VII. TO THE  
PRESENT TIME.

1. The Pilgrimage of Grace, ...	<i>Froude,</i>	... 117
2. <i>Queen Mary and Philip of Spain,</i> ...	<i>Tennyson,</i>	... 122
3. Mary Queen of Scots, ...	<i>Robertson,</i>	... 126
4. The Exploits of Drake, ...	<i>Motley,</i>	... 128
5. The Spanish Armada, ...	<i>Motley,</i>	... 131
6. "Merrie Englande" ...	<i>Collier,</i>	... 136
7. The Grand Remonstrance, ...	<i>Forster,</i>	... 139
8. Dismissal of the Rump, ...	<i>Carlyle,</i>	... 145
9. What England Gained by the Revolution,	<i>Macaulay,</i>	... 150
10. The Black Hole of Calcutta, ...	<i>Macaulay,</i>	... 154
11. The Heights of Abraham, ...	<i>Archer,</i>	... 158
12. Character of James Watt, ...	<i>Jeffrey,</i>	... 163
13. <i>Waterloo,</i> ...	<i>Byron,</i>	... 166
14. The Reform Bill, ...	<i>Mackenzie,</i>	... 169
15. <i>Victoria's Tears,</i> ...	<i>Mrs. Browning,</i>	... 176
16. The Retreat from Cabul, ...	<i>M'Carthy,</i>	... 178
17. The Turning-point at the Alma, ...	<i>Kinglake,</i>	... 184
18. The History of England, the History of Progress, ...	<i>Macaulay,</i>	... 189



# HISTORICAL READER.

(ENGLAND.)

---

## PART I.

### FROM THE ROMAN INVASION TO THE NORMAN CONQUEST.

---

#### 1.—THE ROMAN CONQUEST.

[The natives whom the Romans found in Britain were Celts, of the same race as the inhabitants of Gaul. They were then in an uncivilized state, dwelling in caves and mud houses, and dyeing their bodies to give them a fierce aspect in battle.]

1. The Britons had long remained in a rude but independent state, when Cæsar, having overrun all Gaul by his victories, first cast his eye on their island. He was not 'allured either by its riches or its renown; but being ambitious of carrying the Roman arms into a new world, then mostly unknown, he took advantage of a short interval in his Gaulic wars, and made an invasion on Britain. The natives, informed of his intention, were sensible of the unequal contest, and endeavoured to 'appease him by submissions; which, however, re- 55  
tarded not the execution of his design. After some B.C.  
resistance, he landed, as is supposed, at Deal;<sup>1</sup> and  
having obtained several advantages over the Britons, and  
obliged them to promise hostages for their future obedience,

he was 'constrained, by the necessity of his affairs and the approach of winter, to withdraw his forces into Gaul.

2. The Britons, relieved from the terror of his arms, neglected the performance of their 'stipulations; and that haughty conqueror resolved next summer to chastise them for this breach of treaty. He landed with a greater force;

and though he found a more regular resistance from

54 the Britons, who had united under Cassivelaunus, one  
B.C. of their petty princes, he 'discomfited them in every  
action. He advanced into the country; passed the

Thames in the face of the enemy; took and burned the capital of Cassivelaunus; established his ally, Mandubratius, in the sovereignty of the Trinobantes;<sup>2</sup> and having obliged the inhabitants to make him new submissions, he again returned with his army into Gaul, and left the authority of the Romans more nominal than real in this island.

3. The general who finally established the 'dominion of the Romans in this island was Julius Agricola,<sup>3</sup> who governed it in the reigns of Vespasian,<sup>4</sup> Titus, and

Domitian, and distinguished himself in that scene of

78 action. This great commander formed a regular plan  
A.D. for subduing Britain and rendering the 'acquisition  
useful to the conquerors. He carried his victorious

arms northwards, defeated the Britons in every encounter, pierced into the inaccessible forests and mountains of Caledonia,<sup>5</sup> reduced every state to subjection in the southern parts of the island, and chased before him all the men of fiercer and more 'intractable spirit, who deemed war and death itself less intolerable than servitude under the victors.

He even defeated them in a decisive action which

84 they fought under Galgacus, their leader; and having  
A.D. fixed a chain of garrisons between the friths of

Clyde and Forth, he thereby cut off the barren parts of the island, and secured the Roman province from the incursions of the barbarous inhabitants.

4. During these military enterprises he neglected not the arts of peace. He introduced laws and civility among the Britons, taught them to desire and raise all the conveniences of life, reconciled them to the Roman language and manners, instructed them in letters and science, and employed every expedient to render those chains which he had forged both easy and agreeable to them. The inhabitants, having experienced how unequal their own force was to resist that of the Romans, acquiesced in their rule, and were gradually incorporated as a part of that mighty empire.

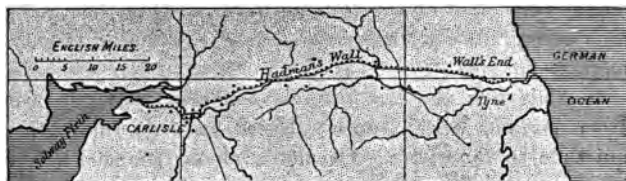
5. This was the last durable conquest made by the Romans; and Britain, once subdued, gave no further inquietude to the victor. Caledonia alone, defended by its barren mountains, and by the contempt which the Romans entertained for it, sometimes infested the more cultivated parts of the island by the incursions of its inhabitants. The better to secure the frontiers of the empire, Adrian (or Hadrian), who visited this island, built a 121  
rampart between the river Tyne and the frith of Solway; Lollius Urbicus, under Antoninus Pius, 139  
erected one in the place where Agricola had formerly established his garrisons; Severus, who made an ex- 208  
pedition into Britain and carried his arms to the most A.D.  
northern extremity of it, added new fortifications to the wall of Adrian; and during the reigns of all the Roman emperors, such a profound tranquillity prevailed in Britain, that little mention is made of the affairs of that island by any historian.

6. Britain, by its situation, was removed from the fury of the barbarous incursions (which affected the heart of the empire); and being also a remote province, not much valued by the Romans, the legions which defended it were carried over to the protection of Italy and 410  
Gaul. But that province, though secured by the A.D.





ROMAN WALL BETWEEN THE FORTH AND THE CLYDE.



ROMAN WALL BETWEEN THE TYNE AND THE SOLWAY.

sea against the inroads of the greater tribes of barbarians, found enemies on its 'frontiers who took advantage of its present defenceless situation. The Picts and Scots<sup>6</sup> who dwelt in the northern parts, beyond the wall of Antoninus, made incursions upon their peaceable and 'effeminate neighbours; and, besides the temporary 'depredations which they committed, these combined nations threatened the whole province with subjection, or, what the inhabitants more dreaded, with plunder and devastation.

7. These tribes, finding their more 'opulent neighbours exposed to invasion, soon broke over the Roman wall, no longer defended by the Roman arms; and, though a contemptible enemy in themselves, met with no resistance from the unwarlike inhabitants. The Britons, accustomed to have recourse to the emperors for defence as well as government, made 'supplications to Rome; and one legion was sent over for their protection. This force was an over-match for the barbarians, repelled their invasion, routed them in every engagement, and having chased

them into their ancient limits, returned in triumph to the defence of the southern provinces of the empire.

8. Their retreat brought on a new invasion of the enemy. The Britons made again an application to Rome, and again obtained the assistance of a legion, which proved effectual for their relief: but the Romans, reduced to 'extremities at home, and 'fatigued with those distant expeditions, informed the Britons that they must no longer look to them for succour, 'exhorted them to arm in their own defence, and urged, that as they were now their own masters, it became them to protect by their valour that independence which their ancient lords had conferred upon them. That they might leave the island with the better grace, the Romans assisted them in erecting anew the wall of Severus, which was built entirely of stone, and which the Britons had not at that time 'artificers skilful enough to repair. And having done this last good 446 office to the inhabitants, they bid a final adieu to A.D. Britain about the year 446, after having been masters of the more considerable part of it during the course of near four centuries.

DAVID HUME: *History of England.*

ac-qui-si'tion, thing gained; conquest.

al-lured', drawn; attracted.

ap-pease', satisfy; pacify.

ar-tif-i-cers, workmen.

con-strained', forced.

dep-re-da-tions, plunderings.

dis-com-fit-ed, defeated.

do-min-ion, power.

ef-fem-i-nate, weak.

en-ter-pris-es, undertakings; labours.

ex-hort-ed, advised.

ex-pe-di-ent, means; scheme.

ex-trem-i-ties, great need.

fa-tigued', tired; exhausted.

fron-tiers, borders; outskirts.

in-cor-po-rat-ed, taken in; included.

in-fest-ed, disturbed; harassed.

in-trac-ta-ble, unruly; violent.

op-u-lent, rich; wealthy.

stip-u-la-tions, terms of agreement.

sup-pli-ca-tions, entreaties; prayers.

tran-qui-li-ty, quietness; peace.

<sup>1</sup> Deal, on the east coast of Kent, opposite the Downs.

<sup>2</sup> Trinoban'tes, the people occupying the country north of the lower Thames—now Middlesex and Essex.

<sup>3</sup> Agric'ola. — His operations were

described by his son-in-law Tacitus, the Roman historian.

<sup>4</sup> Vespasian, &c. — Vespasian reigned from 69 to 79 A.D. In his reign Jerusalem was taken and destroyed by his son Titus (70 A.D.). Titus reigned

two years (79-81 A.D.). In Domitian's reign (81-96 A.D.) there was a great persecution of Christians in Rome and in Syria and the East.

<sup>5</sup> *Caledonia*, North Britain, now Scotland.

<sup>6</sup> *Picts and Scots*.—The Picts were the earliest known inhabitants of North

Britain. The Scots were colonists from Ireland, who settled on the western isles and on the mainland in the sixth century. It was long and keenly debated whether the Picts were Celts or Teutons; but it is now generally agreed that they were Celts, as the Scots certainly were.

## 2.—BOADICEA.

[Boadicea, queen of the Iceni, a tribe of British Celts, was publicly scourged by the Romans, though her husband, at his death, had left them half his wealth. She raised an army to avenge her wrongs. London was reduced to ashes, and seventy thousand Romans were massacred. Suetonius Paulinus avenged this cruelty in a great battle, in which eighty thousand Britons were killed (61 A.D.). Boadicea is said to have poisoned herself, rather than fall into the hands of the Romans. According to another account, she was slain in battle.]

1. When the British warrior queen,  
Bleeding from the Roman rods,<sup>1</sup>  
Sought, with an 'indignant 'mien,  
'Counsel of her country's gods,
2. Sage beneath the spreading oak  
Sat the Druid,<sup>2</sup> hoary chief;  
Every burning word he spoke  
Full of rage, and full of grief:—
3. "Princess! if our agèd eyes  
Weep upon thy 'matchless wrongs,  
'Tis because 'resentment ties  
All the terrors of our tongues.
4. "Rome shall perish!—write that word  
In the blood that she has spilt;  
Perish, hopeless and 'abhorred,  
Deep in ruin as in guilt.
5. "Rome, for 'empire far 'renowned,  
Tramples on a thousand states;  
Soon her pride shall kiss the ground—  
Hark! the Gaul<sup>3</sup> is at her gates!

6. "Other Romans shall arise,  
 'Heedless of a soldier's name;  
 Sounds, not arms, shall win the prize,  
 Harmony<sup>4</sup> the path to fame.
7. "Then the 'progeny that springs  
 From the forests of our land,  
 Armed with thunder, clad with wings,  
 Shall a wider world<sup>5</sup> command.
8. "Regions Cæsar never knew  
 Thy 'posterity<sup>6</sup> shall sway;  
 Where his eagles<sup>7</sup> never flew,  
 None 'invincible as they."—
9. Such the bard's prophetic words,  
 'Pregnant with 'celestial fire,  
 Bending as he swept the chords  
 Of his sweet but awful lyre.
10. She, with all a monarch's pride,  
 Felt them in her bosom glow;  
 Rushed to battle, fought, and died;<sup>8</sup>  
 Dying, hurled them<sup>9</sup> at the foe:—
11. "Ruffians, pitiless as proud,  
 Heaven awards the 'vengeance due;  
 Empire is on us bestowed,  
 Shame and ruin wait for you."

WILLIAM COWPER.

ab-horred', hated.  
 ce-lest'-ial, heavenly.  
 coun'-sel, advice.  
 em'-pire, highest power.  
 heed'-less, careless.  
 in-dig'-nant, scornful and angry.  
 in-vin'-ci-ble, unconquerable.  
 match'-less, unequalled.

mien, manner; look.  
 pos-ter-i-ty, descendants.  
 preg'-nant, filled; teeming.  
 prog'-e-ny, offspring.  
 re-nowned', famed.  
 re-sent'-ment, sense of wrong; anger.  
 ven'-geance, suffering; return for in-jury.

<sup>1</sup> The Roman rods.—A reference to the public scourging inflicted on Boadicea.

<sup>2</sup> Dru'id, a priest of the ancient Britons: said to be so named from the oak (Welsh *derw*, Greek *drus*, oak), for

which the Druids had great veneration. The accepted account is, that the Druids were exterminated by Suetonius Paulinus in 61 A.D.

<sup>3</sup> The Gaul is at her gates.—A reference to the barbarian hordes—

Goths, Vandals, and Huns—which in the fifth century attacked and overthrew the Roman Empire. The Druid is made to see in vision some of these hosts, which entered Italy from Gaul, seizing the gates of Rome.

<sup>4</sup> *Harmony.*—The priest, in his vision, foresees the time when Italy shall become famous for the cultivation of the art of music.

<sup>5</sup> *A wider world.*—The Druid predicts that the British Empire shall one day become greater than that of Rome.

<sup>6</sup> *Thy posterity.*—*Thy successors* is the meaning. The statement never was true of Boadicea's "posterity;" for the bulk of the English nation belongs to the Teutonic and not to the Celtic race.

<sup>7</sup> *His eagles.*—The Roman standards.

<sup>8</sup> *Fought and died.*—Cowper adopts the account of Boadicea's death which represents her as having been slain in battle.

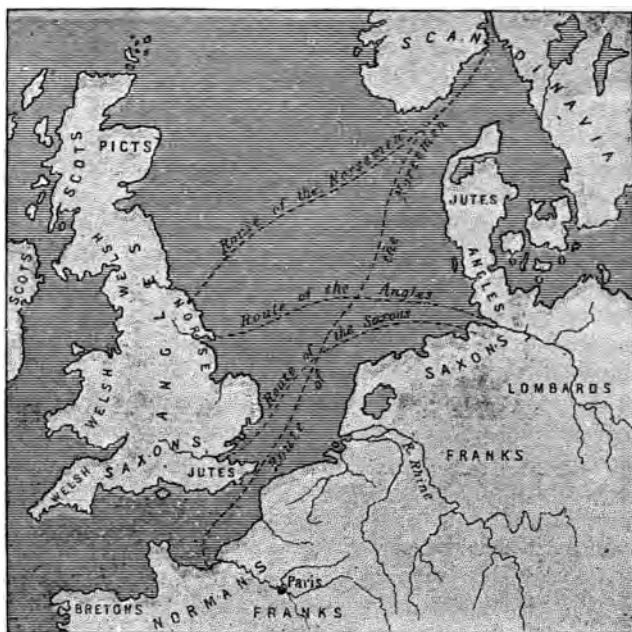
<sup>9</sup> *Them.*—"The bard's prophetic words."

### 3.—THE ENGLISH CONQUEST.

[The Roman occupation of Britain came to an end officially in 410 A.D., and finally about 446. Thereafter the Britons were unable unaided to resist the attacks of the Picts and Scots, and they therefore asked the English, who were accustomed to visit their coasts, to give them help. The English willingly did so; and in the end they conquered and dispossessed the people whom they came to aid. The dates assigned to their settlements are from 449 to 603.]

1. The founders of the English people came straight across the sea from one small corner in the wilderness of nations,<sup>1</sup> where three obscure tribes, unheeded at the time when the world was full of the name and terror of Goths and Huns, were loosely united in one of the leagues common at the time among the 'barbarians. Jutes, Angles, and a tribe of old "Saxons," whose fathers had moved over Europe from east to west, till they were stopped by the broad mouth of the Elbe, and by the bleak and dreary shores of the North Sea, had learned that the ocean, though very terrible, offered a useful war-path to the warriors who dared to trust it.

2. According to our earliest traditions, a band of these rovers, hovering about the coast as many other bands had for many years done before them, was invited, amid the 'anarchy left in Britain by the 'retirement of the Roman legions, to help Romanized Britons against their wilder kinsfolk.<sup>2</sup> What followed was on a small scale the same as that which so often happened on a large one in the



THE ENGLISH MIGRATIONS.

empire. From allies the new comers became invaders, and the first invaders became masters of Kent. The English settlers in Kent were Jutes. Others from the same region followed.

3. A few years later, a band of Saxons in three ships, we are told, planted themselves on the coast of what they made Sussex. Another band in five ships, landing more to the westward, laid the foundation of the great kingdom of Wessex. On the east coast, Angles and Saxons continued to land, to invade, to occupy, from the Thames to the Wash, from the Wash to the Humber, from the Humber to the Tweed. Then, up the rivers and along the Roman

roads, the different bands pushed forward into the interior, from the south coast, and from the east, with 'chequered fortune but with unabated stubbornness.

4. They 'encountered equal stubbornness. The native resistance was of that kind which a weaker but 'tenacious race offers to a stronger one; unobservant of opportunities, slack and ineffective at critical moments, but obstinate, difficult to extinguish, always ready to revive, and sometimes bursting out into a series of heroic and victorious exploits. The name of King Arthur, whatever historical 'obscurity<sup>3</sup> hangs about it, has left its 'indelible mark in our national traditions. Through continued ill fortune, with intervals of success, but with general failure, this resistance was 'protracted and fierce. But it was in vain. The advance of the tide was slow but continuous, sometimes arrested but never retreating; bit by bit the land was covered; fragment by fragment of British territory broke away, and was swallowed up in the rising flood, which came not in one channel but in many, and from many different sides.

5. The first attempts at occupation by the Jutes in Kent were, according to the English chronicles, about the 449 middle of the fifth century, the years when southern A.D. and central Europe were trembling before the terrible king of the Huns.<sup>4</sup> About fifty years later, in the times of Theodoric<sup>5</sup> and Clovis,<sup>6</sup> began the West Saxon advance under the house of Cerdic from the Hampshire harbours. In another half century, while Vandals and Goths were falling before the sword of Belisarius,<sup>7</sup> there was an English kingdom set up in the north, and English settlements on the east coast, and along the rivers which run into the North Sea.

6. We see the British boundary driven inwards, and forming an irregular semicircle from the Clyde to the *Land's End*, flanked for a great portion of the line by the

English settlements on the east, and broken into and deeply 'indented by the 'encroachments of English conquest along the course of the Severn. Another fifty 603 years, and the great English kingdom of Northum- A.D. bria emerges under Æthelfrith,<sup>8</sup> and the line of the British territories is again severed and broken up into separate districts.

7. Then began the second stage of the great change. The 'converging lines of advance met in the central part of the island. The struggle for new ground began between English tribes and kingdoms: wars for dominion were waged by one kingdom against its neighbours; 'supremacy, more or less wide and undisputed, was won by personal qualities in one king, was lost by the want of them in another, was exercised for a time, extinguished for a time, transferred from one kingdom to another, as each was the more fortunate in its men, its circumstances, and its wars. But this continual 'alternation of peace and war among the English kingdoms, this perpetual trial of strength, and this fluctuation between subordination and independence, was the process by which the tribes which had been a loose 'confederacy by the banks of the Eyder and the Elbe, were again to become one nation in England.

8. The centre of power moved from the north, through the midland, to the south; from Northumbria to Mercia, from Mercia till it became 'permanently 827 fixed in Wessex.<sup>9</sup> And by that time, three centuries A.D. and a half from the first Kentish inroads, by a progress most irregular and turbulent, but never interrupted, the English nation had grown into permanent form and character out of the detached bands and tribal settlements and petty kingdoms, among which the island was at first parcelled out. It had organized institutions, a language, a spirit of its own, which it owed to no foreign source. *The new people which had arisen in the West, and changed*



Cæsar's name of Britain to Egbert's England, was, as has been truly said, "the one purely German nation that rose upon the wreck of Rome."

9. But, perhaps, because so slow and gradual, the English conquest was complete in a sense in which the Teutonic conquests on the mainland were not. It was the complete displacement of one race by another. How this was done, we have but imperfect accounts. But so much is certain, that whereas in the fifth century the language of Britain was Celtic, with an admixture of Latin in the towns where the Romanized population was gathered, in the course of two hundred years Celtic had disappeared, and Latin had been introduced afresh.

10. From the Tamar and the Severn to the Tweed, a new language, purely and unmixedly Teutonic, in structure, genius, and for the most part in its vocabulary, had become the speech of the country; the speech of all freemen; the speech of all but slaves, bondmen, and outlaws; the speech which gave names, if not to the rivers and the hills, or to the great walled cities remaining from the Roman times, yet to all the present divisions of the land, and to all the new settlements of men.

11. The English conquerors, unlike the Gothic and Frankish ones,<sup>10</sup> had not suffered the old population to subsist around them. Saxons and Angles,—it is the only way in which the result is to be explained,—carried their conquests to extermination. They slew, they reduced to slavery, or they drove off the former inhabitants; they cleared them away, as the Red Indians were cleared away in America. No trace of intermixture appears between the "Saxon" and the "Welsh," who hated one another with the deepest and most irreconcilable hatred. No British names appear among the servants of the English kings. No vestiges survived of British political or social life.

12. Romanized cities, villas which showed the marbles and mosaics of the South, Welsh hamlets and hill forts, all perished amid sack, fire, and massacre. Some lines of 'indestructible Roman roads, like Watling Street,'<sup>11</sup> some massive Roman walls, such as the fragments in London, Lincoln, and Caer-gwent; some Anglicized Roman names of cities survive, to show who were masters of the land before the English came.

RICHARD CHURCH: *The Beginning of the Middle Ages.*

**al-ter-na-tion**, succession; coming by turns.

**an-ar-chy**, lawlessness; absence of government.

**bar-ba-ri-ans**, uncivilized tribes.

**cheq-uered**, varied; good and bad interwoven.

**con-fed-er-a-cy**, league; union.

**con-verg-ing**, inclining together; tending to meet.

**dis-place-ment**, setting aside.

**en-coun-tered**, met with. [passes.

**en-croach-ments**, advances; tres-

**ex-ter-mi-na-tion**, complete destruction.

**in-del-i-ble**, that cannot be blotted out.

**in-dent-ed**, cut into or notched, as if by teeth.

**in-de-struc-ti-ble**, that cannot be destroyed.

**ir-rec-on-cil-a-ble**, that cannot be made to agree.

**ob-scu-ri-ty**, darkness; uncertainty.

**per-ma-nent-ly**, durably; lastingly.

**pro-tract-ed**, long continued.

**re-tire-ment**, withdrawing.

**su-prem-a-cy**, higher authority.

**te-na-cious**, obstinate; holding fast to their rights.

<sup>1</sup> **The wilderness of nations.**—The confused mass of peoples occupying the Continent of Europe in the third and fourth centuries.

<sup>2</sup> **Their wilder kinsfolk.**—The Picts and Scots, native tribes that had not been Romanized.

<sup>3</sup> **Whatever historical obscurity, &c.**—So much of King Arthur's history is fabulous, that some have doubted whether any such person ever existed. He is famous as the founder of the Knights of the Round Table, and as the introducer of Christianity among the Britons. His death is assigned to 542 A.D. The legends of Arthur were first embodied in history by Geoffrey of Monmouth, who died in 1154 A.D.

<sup>4</sup> **King of the Huns.**—Attila, who in 451 A.D. invaded Gaul, and was defeated at Chalons by the Romans.

<sup>5</sup> **Theodoric**, the founder of the Ostro-Gothic kingdom in Italy.

<sup>6</sup> **Clevis**, king of the Franks, and

founder of the Merovingian dynasty in France. He removed his capital from Tours to Paris in 510 A.D.

<sup>7</sup> **Belisarius**, the great general of the Emperor Justinian, who recovered in the north of Africa the vessels of the temple at Jerusalem. After a brilliant career, slander overtook him, and he ended his days in poverty and disgrace, 559 A.D.

<sup>8</sup> **Ethelfrith**, the king of Bernicia, who seized Deira and united these states in Northumbria, 603 A.D. (See *ROYAL HISTORY OF ENGLAND*, p. 46.)

<sup>9</sup> **Wessex.**—Egbert began to reign there in 800, and became Overlord of England in 827 A.D.

<sup>10</sup> **The Gothic and Frankish ones**,—on the Continent, that is to say.

<sup>11</sup> **Watling Street.**—One of four great Roman roads in Britain. It extended from Kent to Cardigan Bay, and is said to have derived its name from Vitellianus, a Roman officer who directed its construction.

## 4.—CHRISTIANITY IN ENGLAND.

1. It was not long until the great spiritual power, which grew on the ruins of Pagan Rome, stretched out its  
**430** branches toward the British Isles. Pope Celestine  
 A.D. sent Palladius in 430 A.D., and St. Patrick two years later, to convert the Scots in Ireland. Ninian and Kentigern laboured during the fifth and sixth centuries in the south-west of Scotland. Columba of Donegal, a man of noble birth and remarkable qualities, landed with  
**563** twelve monks on the Scottish coast in 563, bent on  
 A.D. the 'conversion of the Picts. These, however, can hardly be regarded as Papal 'missionaries. Settling in Iona, a bare little island off the lower horn of Mull, Columba, the Apostle of Scotland, established there a school of teachers and preachers, who did more true missionary work in Scotland and Northumbria during those dark times than any other class of men.

2. Columba was a missionary in the true sense. Augustine was a shrewd, clever, worldly priest, who came as an 'ambassador from Rome at the bidding of Gregory the Great,<sup>1</sup> to plant the Papal power on the shores of Britain. It is a mistake to call the landing of Augustine the introduction of Christianity into England. It was only the introduction of the authority of the Church of Rome. Christianity was there before; and its lamp was shining, though with faint and fitful gleams, by many a humble hearth, far away among the mountains of Wales.

3. Æthelbert, an *Aesling*<sup>2</sup> of Kent, had married Bertha (Bercta), daughter of the Frankish King of Paris, who was a professed Christian. Within a church at Canterbury the chaplain of this lady, Bishop Liudhard, who had come with her from Gaul, held a regular Christian service, to which 'curiosity, rather than any deeper motive, 'attracted many of the Kentish people. Æthelbert went on worship-

ping his idols, Thor and Odin, for fully thirty years after his marriage; but he must in the meantime have grown familiar with some of the doctrines preached in that little chapel of St. Martin. The ground was therefore somewhat broken for the 'operations of Augustine and his monks.

4. A letter from Æthelbert to Gregory, requesting a mission to Britain, was the first move in this important 'transaction. The gentle words of Bertha, dropping continually on the Aesking's ear, had wrought out this result; and the Frankish chaplain was in all likelihood the scribe on the occasion. Gladly Gregory 'responded to the call; for his active mind had been long ago attracted by the distant isle, in the hope of winning over it a victory more enduring than the triumphs of the Cæsars.

5. He had once seen some English slaves on view in the Roman market, where their blue eyes, yellow hair, and fair complexion contrasted strongly with the dark locks and swarthy cheeks of Southern captives. On inquiring who and whence they were, his fancy was struck by the scriptural 'significance of the answers he received. "Angles!" he exclaimed; "not Angles, but angels." "From Deira? Then they shall be *de ira eruti*,—snatched from wrath." "Name of their king Ælla! That is Alleluiah." Some such youths he had collected with the design of training them for a mission to England; but the project failed. The arrival of Æthelbert's letter filled his heart with joy. Selecting for the work Augustine, the prior of the convent to which he had himself belonged, he 'despatched that priest with forty monks to the distant shores of Kent.

6. These men, frightened by the accounts they received of the islanders, 'lingered in Gaul, and sent back their leader to beg for a recall. But Gregory had willed it; they must go on. Accompanied, therefore, by Frankish bishops, whose language was not unlike that of the men of

Kent, they crossed the sea, and wondered to find themselves in a fair and smiling land. A message **597** from Æthelbert 'reassured them yet more. Bidding A.D. them welcome, and thanking them for having come so far to do him good, he said that they might remain as long as they pleased. He then agreed to give the foreign monks an audience in the open air, in sight of the assembled men of Kent.

7. The meeting must have been an 'impressive scene. Somewhere in the island of Thanet a double throne was set up in the open air. When the King and Queen had ascended their royal chairs, sounds of sacred music were heard in the distance. The rough Jutes stood around in silent awe. Nearer came the song, and the words of Latin psalms and 'litanies, chanted by the voices of the monks, grew distinct as the procession advanced. Dressed in gorgeous robes of silk and gold, with a picture of the Saviour carried aloft, and a silver crucifix flashing in every hand, the monks reached the foot of the throne. Augustine spoke through his Frankish friends, setting forth the blessings and hopes that flowed from the faith he professed. The answer of the King was cautious ; but the delighted face of Queen Bertha sufficiently rewarded the missionaries for their toils and fears. Before long, Augustine sent a letter to Gregory 'announcing the baptism of the Kentish King, and the conversion of ten thousand Jutes !

8. Augustine,<sup>3</sup> appointed Archbishop of Canterbury, entered with zeal on the duties of his see. His grand object was to bend every man in Britain beneath Roman sway. He held a 'conference with the simple priests of the Cymri ;<sup>4</sup> but they resented the 'arrogance of the foreign monk, who desired to thrust on them the tenets of a distant city and an unknown man, and refused obedience to the Pope. A second meeting had the same result. Repelled by Augustine's crafty proposals, but 'undaunted by his violent threats,

they broke off the conference, and went back to their mountains.

9. About twenty years after the arrival of Augustine, Æthelburh, the daughter of Æthelbert and Bertha, became the wife of King Edwin (Eadwine) of Deira. She was accompanied to Bamborough Castle by Paulinus, a Christian bishop, through whose preaching Edwin and the Northumbrians were converted to Christianity. In 627, Paulinus became first Archbishop of York. Not long afterwards, Aidan went from Iona to Holy Isle, and founded the see of Lindisfarne. There were thus introduced into Northumbria two 'ecclesiastical authorities—that of the Church of Iona, and that of the Church of Rome. There **664** naturally arose a dispute between them. At the A.D. Synod of Whitby, in 664, it was decided that Northumbria should owe 'allegiance to the Bishop of Rome alone. Thereupon the monks of Lindisfarne returned to Iona.

*The Royal History of England.*

al-le'giance, submission; loyalty.  
am-bas-sa-dor, a messenger of high rank.

an-nounc'ing, making known; intimating.

ar-ro-gance, pride; assumed superiority.

at-tract'ed, drew.

con-fer-ence, meeting.

con-ver-sion, making Christians.

cu-ri-os-i-ty, desire to know; inquisitiveness.

de-spatched', sent off.

ec-cle-si-as-ti-cal, relating to the Church.

im-pres-sive, telling; touching.

lin-gered, put off time; delayed.

lit-a-nies, prayers.

mis-sion-a-ries, men sent forth to preach.

op-ar-a-tions, work; doings.

re-as-sured', restored courage to.

re-spond'ed, answered; yielded.

sig-nif-i-cance, meaning.

trans-ac-tion, business.

un-daunt'ed, not terrified.

<sup>1</sup> Gregory the Great.—Pope from 590 to 604 A.D.

<sup>2</sup> Æsk'ing, a son of Æsc (-ing, son of); a descendant of Eorik of Kent, Hengest's son, who was surnamed Æsc, or "the ash-tree."

<sup>3</sup> Angus'tine, first Archbishop of Canterbury, must not be confounded with "St. Augustine," one of the fathers of the Christian Church, who flourished

from 387 till 430 A.D. He was Bishop of Hippo in Africa. The English Augustine, as he may be called, died in 605.

<sup>4</sup> The Cym'ri, the Celtic natives of Britain. Of the Celtic stock there were two branches—the *Cymric* or *Cambrian*, and the *Gadhelic* or *Gaelic*. From the former the names Cambria (Wales) and Cumberland were derived.

## 5.—THE VENERABLE BEDE.

[In the hands of Æthelfrith and Eadwine, Northumbria became the most powerful state in England. In 607, Æthelfrith ruled from the Forth to the Humber. In 626, Eadwine became Overlord of England, his sovereignty being recognised as far south as Essex and Mercia. The supremacy of Northumbria lasted till the death of Egfrith, in 685, in battle with the Picts at Nectansmere. Mercia, which had for some time been growing in power, then became the foremost state, and Offa, its king, became overlord in 784.]

1. While Mercia was thus battling for the overlordship of the south, Northumbria had set aside its glory in arms for the pursuits of peace. Under the peaceful reigns of Egfrith's successors, Eadfrith the Learned and Coelwulf, their kingdom became in the middle of the eighth century the literary centre of the Christian world in Western Europe. No schools were more famous than those of Jarrow<sup>1</sup> and York. The whole learning of the age seemed to be summed up in a Northumbrian scholar. Bæda—the Venerable Bede as later times styled him—was born about ten years after the Synod of Whitby,<sup>2</sup> beneath the 672 shade of a great abbey which Benedict Biscop was A.D. rearing by the mouth of the Wear. His youth was trained and his long 'tranquil life was wholly spent in an offshoot of Benedict's house which was founded by his scholar Ceolfrid.

2. Bæda never stirred from Jarrow. "I spent my whole life in the same monastery," he says; "and while attentive to the rule of my order and the service of the Church, my constant pleasure lay in learning, or teaching, or writing." The words sketch for us a scholar's life, the more touching in its simplicity that it is the life of the first great English scholar. The quiet grandeur of a life 'consecrated to knowledge, the tranquil pleasure that lies in learning and teaching and writing, dawned for Englishmen in the story of Bæda. While still young, he became teacher, and six hundred monks, besides strangers that flocked thither for instruction, formed his school of Jarrow.

3. It is hard to imagine how, among the toils of the schoolmaster and the duties of the monk, Bæda could have found time for the 'composition of the numerous works that made his name famous in the West. But materials for study had 'accumulated in Northumbria through the journeys of Wilfrith and Benedict Biscop, and Archbishop Eggerht was forming the first English library at York. The tradition of the older Irish teachers still lingered to direct the young scholar into that path of scriptural 'interpretation to which he chiefly owed his fame. Greek, a rare accomplishment in the West, came to him from the school which the Greek archbishop Theodore founded beneath the walls of Canterbury. His skill in the 'ecclesiastical chant was derived from a Roman cantor<sup>3</sup> whom Pope Vitalian<sup>4</sup> sent in the train of Benedict Biscop.

4. Little by little the young scholar thus made himself master of the whole range of the science of his time; he became, as Burke<sup>5</sup> rightly styled him, "the father of English learning." The tradition of the older classic culture was first revived for England in his quotations of Plato<sup>6</sup> and Aristotle,<sup>7</sup> of Seneca<sup>8</sup> and Cicero,<sup>9</sup> of Lucretius<sup>10</sup> and Ovid.<sup>11</sup> Virgil<sup>12</sup> cast over him the same spell that he cast over Dante;<sup>13</sup> verses from the *Æneid* break his narratives of 'martyrdoms, and the disciple ventures on the track of the great master in a little 'eclogue descriptive of the approach of spring. His work was done with small aid from others. "I am my own secretary," he writes; "I make my own notes. I am my own librarian." But forty-five works remained after his death to attest his 'prodigious industry.

5. In his own eyes and those of his 'contemporaries the most important among these were the commentaries and 'homilies upon various books of the Bible, which he had drawn from the writings of the Fathers. But he was far from confining himself to theology. In treatises compiled



as text-books for his scholars, Bæda threw together all that the world had then accumulated in astronomy and 'meteorology, in physics and music, in philosophy, grammar, rhetoric, arithmetic, medicine. But the 'encyclopædic character of his researches left him in heart a simple Englishman. He loved his own English tongue, he was skilled in English song, his last work was a translation into English of the Gospel of St. John,<sup>14</sup> and almost the last words that broke from his lips were some English rhymes upon death.

6. But the noblest proof of his love of England lies in the work which 'immortalizes his name. In his "Ecclesiastical History of the English Nation," Bæda was at once the founder of 'medieval history and the first English historian. All that we really know of the century and a half that follows the landing of Augustine, we know from him. Wherever his own personal observation extended, the story is told with admirable detail and force. He is hardly less full or accurate in the portions which he owed to his Kentish friends, Alcwine and Nothelm. What he owed to no informant was his own exquisite faculty of story-telling; and yet no story of his own telling is so touching as the story of his death.

7. Two weeks before the Easter<sup>15</sup> of 735 the old man was seized with an extreme weakness and loss of breath. He still preserved, however, his usual pleasantness and gay good humour, and in spite of 'prolonged sleeplessness continued his lectures to the pupils about him. Verses of his own English tongue broke from time to time from the master's lips—rude rhymes that told how before the "need-fare,"<sup>16</sup> Death's stern "must-go," none can enough bethink him what is to be his doom for good or ill.

8. The tears of Bæda's scholars mingled with his song. "We never read without weeping," writes one of them. *So the days rolled on to Ascension-tide,*<sup>17</sup> and still master

and pupils toiled at their work; for Bæda longed to bring to an end his version of St. John's Gospel into the English tongue, and his 'extracts from Bishop Isidore. "I don't want my boys to read a lie," he answered those who would have had him rest, "or to work to no purpose, after I am gone."

9. A few days before Ascension-tide his sickness grew upon him; but he spent the whole day in teaching, only saying cheerfully to his scholars, "Learn with what speed you may; I know not how long I may last." The dawn broke on another sleepless night, and again the old man called his scholars round him and bade them write. "There is still a chapter wanting," said the scribe, as the morning drew on, "and it is hard for thee to question thyself any longer." "It is easily done," said Bæda; "take thy pen and write quickly." Amid tears and farewells the day wore on to eventide.

"There is yet one sentence unwritten, dear master," said the boy. "Write it quickly," bade the dying man. "It is finished now," said the little scribe at last. "You speak truth," said the master; "all is finished now." Placed upon the pavement, his head supported in his scholar's arms, his face turned to the spot where he was wont to pray, Bæda chanted the solemn "Glory to God." As his voice reached the close of his song, he passed quietly away.

J. R. GREEN: *History of the English People.*

ac-cu'-mu-lät-ed, gathered.  
com-po-si'-tion, writing; production.  
con-se-crät-ed, set apart; devoted.  
con-tem'-po-ra-ries, persons living  
at the same time.  
ec-cle-si-as-ti-cal, belonging to, or  
used in, the Church.  
ec-logue, a pastoral poem.  
en-cy-clo-pæd-ic, wide; universal.  
ex-tracts, selected passages.  
hom'i-lies, discourses; sermons.

im-mor-tal-iz-es, makes immortal,  
or everlasting.  
in-ter-pre-ta-tion, explanation.  
mar'-tyr-doms, deaths of martyrs, or  
witnesses for the truth.  
me-di-e-val, middle-age.  
me-te-o-rol-o-gy, the science which  
treats of the atmosphere.  
pro-dig-i-ous, very great; enormous.  
pro-longed', continued.  
tran-qui-l, quiet; peaceful.

<sup>1</sup> Jar'row, now a town of 18,000 inhabitants in Durham, 5½ miles north-east of Gateshead.

<sup>2</sup> Syn'-od of Whit'by, held in 664 A.D. It settled the controversy as to whether the Church of Northumbria

owed allegiance to the Bishop of Rome or to the Abbot of Iona, by deciding in favour of Rome. The monks of Lindisfarne then withdrew from Holy Isle.

<sup>3</sup> *Cant'or*, a chanter, or precentor; a leader of the musical service.

<sup>4</sup> *Vita'lian*, pope from 657 to 672 A.D. He encouraged education in England.

<sup>5</sup> *Burke*, Edmund, an English orator and statesman; born 1729, died 1797. His chief work is entitled "Reflections on the Revolution in France."

<sup>6</sup> *Pla'to*, a Greek philosopher; born 429, died 347 B.C.

<sup>7</sup> *Ar'istotle*, a Greek philosopher; born 384, died 322 B.C.

<sup>8</sup> *Sen'eca*, a Roman philosopher; born 3 B.C.; died 65 A.D.

<sup>9</sup> *Cic'ero*, the greatest of Roman orators; born 106, died 43 B.C.

<sup>10</sup> *Lucre'tius*, a Roman poet and philosopher; born 95, died 52 B.C.

<sup>11</sup> *Ov'id*, a Roman poet, author of

the "Metamorphoses;" born 43 B.C.; died 18 A.D.

<sup>12</sup> *Vir'gil*, a Roman poet, author of the "*Æneid*;" born 70, died 19 B.C.

<sup>13</sup> *Dan'te*, the greatest of Italian poets, author of "*The Divine Comedy*;" born 1265, died 1321 A.D.

<sup>14</sup> *The Gospel of St. John*, Beeda's translation of this Gospel—the first effort in English prose literature—was lost, probably during the Danish raids in Northumbria. The "*Ecclesiastical History of the English Nation*" is written in Latin.

<sup>15</sup> *Easter*, the Sunday next after Good Friday,—the day on which Christ rose from the dead.

<sup>16</sup> *Need-fare*, that is, "must go." *Fare* is to go [O. E. *faran*, Ger. *fahren*]; and the *fare*, in travelling, is what you pay for going.

<sup>17</sup> *Ascension-tide*, forty days after Easter,—the day on which Christ ascended into heaven.

## 6.—DANISH SWORD CHANT.

[Just when Wessex had succeeded in gaining the mastery over the other English states, she was called on to combat new enemies. These were the Danes, who began their ravages on the English coasts in 787 A.D. The Danes were men of kindred race with the English, and ultimately amalgamated with them. From 1017 to 1042 three Danish kings occupied the English throne. In early times, however, they were rovers who had no fixed dwelling-places, and who boasted that they could command with the sword everything they might desire. These habits and feelings are expressed in the following verses.]

1. 'Tis not the gray hawk's flight<sup>1</sup> o'er mountain and 'mere,  
'Tis not the fleet hound's course tracking the deer,  
'Tis not the light hoof-print of black steed or gray,  
Though 'sweltering it gallop a long summer day,  
Which 'mete forth the 'lordships I 'challenge as mine.  
Ha! ha! 'tis the good brand  
I clutch in my strong hand  
That can their broad 'marches and numbers define.  
LAND-GIVER! I kiss thee.

2. Dull builders of houses, base tillers of earth,  
*Gaping, ask me what lordships I owned at my birth;*

But the pale fools wax mute when I point with my sword  
East, west, north, and south, shouting, "There am I lord!"  
Wold and waste, town and tower, hill, valley, and stream,  
Trembling, bow to my sway  
In the fierce battle-fray  
When the star that rules fate is this falchion's red gleam.  
MIGHT-GIVER! I kiss thee.

3. I have heard great harps sounding in bower and hall;  
I have drunk the sweet music that bright lips let fall;  
I have hunted in green-wood, and heard small birds sing;  
But away with this idle and cold jargoning!  
The music I love is the shout of the brave,  
The yell of the dying,  
The scream of the flying,  
When this arm yields Death's sickle and garners the grave.<sup>2</sup>  
JOY-GIVER! I kiss thee.

4. Far isles of the ocean thy lightning hath known,  
And wide o'er the mainland thy horrors have shone.  
Great sword of my father, stern joy of his hand,  
Thou hast carved his name deep on the stranger's red  
strand,  
And won him the glory of undying song.  
Keen cleaver of gay crests,  
Sharp piercer of broad breasts,  
Grim slayer of heroes, and scourge of the strong!  
FAME-GIVER! I kiss thee.

5. In a love more abiding than that the heart knows  
For maiden more lovely than summer's first rose,  
My heart's knit to thee, and lives but for thee.  
In dreamings of gladness thou'rt dancing with me  
Brave measures of madness<sup>3</sup> in some battle-field,  
Where armour is ringing,  
And noble blood springing,  
And, cloven, yawn helmet,<sup>4</sup> stout hauberk, and shield.  
DEATH-GIVER! I kiss thee.

6. The smile of a maiden's eye soon may depart,  
And light is the faith of fair woman's heart;  
Changeful as light clouds, and 'wayward as wind,  
Be the passions that govern weak woman's mind;  
But thy metal's as true as thy polish is bright.

When ill's wax in number,  
Thy love does not slumber,  
But, star-like, burns fiercer the darker the night.  
HEART-GLADDENER! I kiss thee.

7. My children have perished by war or by wave;  
Now, childless and 'sireless, I long for the grave.  
When the path of our glory is shadowed in death,  
With me thou wilt slumber beneath the brown heath;  
Thou wilt rest on my bosom,<sup>5</sup> and with it decay;

While harps shall be ringing,  
And 'scalds shall be singing  
The deeds we have done in our old fearless day.  
SONG-GIVER! I kiss thee.

WILLIAM MOTHERWELL.

chal'enge, claim.

fal'-chion, a sword with curved point.

hau'-berk, a shirt of mail, formed of steel rings.

jar-gon-ing', confused talk.

lord-ships, lands of a lord; estates.

march-es, boundaries.

mere, lake or sea.

mete, measure.

scalds, Norse ballad singers or reciters.

sire-less, fatherless.

swelt-er-ing, faint from heat.

way-ward, wilful.

wold, a plain, or open country.

<sup>1</sup> 'Tis not the gray hawk's flight,  
&c.—The meaning is, the Norseman's possessions are not measured by the hawk's flight, nor by the hound's course, nor by the steed's power of galloping, but by the conquering power of his sword. The bounds of his lands are drawn with his brand alone.

<sup>2</sup> Garners the grave, reaps the harvest of Death.

<sup>3</sup> Brave measures of madness, wild or frantic movements. The word

"measures" is not quite appropriate, as it is properly applied to grave, solemn, and regularly "measured" dances.

<sup>4</sup> And, cloven, yawn helmet, &c.—The construction is, "in some battle-field, where helmet, hauberk, and shield, being cloven, yawn,"—that is, gape.

<sup>5</sup> Rest on my bosom.—Referring to the pagan custom of burying a warrior's sword with him.

## 7.—KING ALFRED AND THE DANES.

[King Alfred, fourth son of Æthelwulf, succeeded to the throne of Wessex in 871 A.D. Egbert had defeated the Danes and the men of Cornwall at Hengest's-Down in 835; but during the reigns of Alfred's father and his three brothers the invaders had made great progress. They had subdued Northumbria in 867, and East Anglia in the following year; and when Alfred came to the throne, they were gathering their strength for a determined attack on his kingdom.]

1. The West Saxons were now the only remaining power in England; and though supported by the vigour and abilities of Alfred, they were unable to resist the efforts of those 'ravagers who from all quarters invaded them. A new swarm of Danes came over **875** this year, under three princes, Guthrum, Oscital, and A.D. Amund; and having first joined their countrymen at Repton,<sup>1</sup> they soon found the necessity of separating, in order to provide for their 'subsistence. Part of them, under the command of Haldene, their chieftain, marched into Northumberland, where they fixed their quarters; part of them took quarters at Cambridge, whence they dislodged in the ensuing summer, and seized Wareham,<sup>2</sup> in the county of Dorset, the very centre of Alfred's dominions.

2. That prince so 'straitened them in these quarters that they were content to come to a treaty with him, and stipulated to depart his country. Alfred, well acquainted with their usual perfidy, obliged them to swear upon the holy relics to the observance of the treaty; not that he expected they would pay any 'veneration to the relics, but he hoped that if they now violated this oath, their impiety would infallibly draw down upon them the vengeance of Heaven. But the Danes, little 'apprehensive of the danger, suddenly, without seeking any pretence, fell upon Alfred's army, and having put it to rout, marched westward and took possession of Exeter.

3. The prince collected new forces, and exerted such vigour that he fought in one year eight battles with the

enemy, and reduced them to the utmost extremity. He hearkened, however, to new proposals of peace; and was satisfied to stipulate with them that they would settle somewhere in England, and would not permit the entrance of more ravagers into the kingdom. But while he was expecting the execution of this treaty, which it seemed the interest of the Danes themselves to fulfil, he heard that another body had landed, and, having collected all the scattered troops of their countrymen, had surprised Chippenham,<sup>8</sup> then a considerable town, and were exercising their usual ravages all around them.

4. This last incident quite broke the spirit of the Saxons, and reduced them to despair. Finding that, after all the miserable havoc which they had undergone in their persons and in their property, after all the vigorous actions which they had exerted in their own defence, a new band, equally greedy of spoil and slaughter, had disembarked among them, they believed themselves abandoned by Heaven to destruction, and delivered over to those swarms of robbers which the fertile North thus incessantly poured forth against them. Some left their country and retired into Wales, or fled beyond sea; others submitted to the conquerors, in hopes of appeasing their fury by a servile obedience. And every man's attention being now engrossed in concern for his own preservation, no one would hearken to the exhortations of the king, who summoned them to make, under his conduct, one effort more in defence of their prince, their country, and their liberties.

5. Alfred himself was obliged to relinquish the ensigns of his dignity, to dismiss his servants, and to seek shelter in the meanest disguises from the pursuit and fury of his enemies. He concealed himself under a peasant's habit, and lived some time in the house of a neat-herd who had been intrusted with the care of some of his cows. There passed here an incident which has been recorded by all the

historians, and was long preserved by popular tradition ; though it contains nothing memorable in itself, except so far as every circumstance is interesting which attends so much virtue and dignity reduced to such distress. The wife of the neat-herd was ignorant of the condition of her royal guest ; and observing him one day busy by the fire-side in trimming his bow and arrows, she desired him to take care of some cakes which were toasting, while she was employed elsewhere in other domestic affairs. But Alfred, whose thoughts were otherwise engaged, neglected the injunction ; and the good woman on her return finding her cakes all burned, rated the king very severely, and up-braided him that he always seemed very well pleased to eat her warm cakes, though he was thus negligent in toasting them.

6. By degrees Alfred, as he found the search of the enemy become more remiss, collected some of his retainers, and retired into the centre of a bog, formed by the stagnating waters of the Tone and Parret, in Somersetshire. He here found two acres of firm ground ; and building a habitation on them, rendered himself secure by its fortifications, and still more by the unknown and inaccessible roads which led to it, and by the forests and morasses with which it was every way environed.

7. This place he called *Æthelingay*,<sup>4</sup> or the Isle of Nobles ; and it now bears the name of Athelney. He thence made frequent and unexpected sallies upon the Danes, who often felt the vigour of his arm, but knew not from what quarter the blow came. He subsisted himself and his followers by the plunder which he acquired ; he procured them consolation by revenge ; and from small successes he opened their minds to hope that, notwithstanding his present low condition, more important victories might at length attend his valour.

8. When Alfred observed symptoms of successful resist-



ance in his subjects, he left his retreat ; but before he would assemble them in arms, or urge them to any attempt which, if unfortunate, might in their present 'despondency prove fatal, he resolved to inspect himself the situation of the enemy, and to judge of the probability of success. For this purpose he entered their camp under the disguise of a harper, and passed unsuspected through every quarter. He so entertained them with his music and 'facetious humours, that he met with a welcome reception, and was even introduced to the tent of Guthrum, their prince, where he remained some days. He remarked the supine security of the Danes, their contempt of the English, their negligence in foraging and plundering, and their 'dissolute wasting of what they gained by rapine and violence.

9. Encouraged by these favourable appearances, he secretly sent 'emissaries to the most considerable of his subjects, and summoned them to a 'rendezvous, attended by their warlike followers, at Brixton,<sup>5</sup> on the borders of Selwood Forest. The English, who had hoped to put an end to their calamities by servile submission, now found  
**878** the insolence and rapine of the conqueror more 'in-  
A.D. tolerable than all past fatigues and dangers ; and at the appointed day they joyfully resorted to their prince.

On his appearance, they received him with shouts of applause ; and they could not satiate their eyes with the sight of the beloved monarch whom they had long regarded as dead, and who now, with voice and looks expressing his confidence of success, called them to liberty and to vengeance.

10. He instantly conducted them to Edington,<sup>6</sup> where the Danes were encamped ; and taking advantage of his previous knowledge of the place, he directed his attack against the most unguarded quarter of the enemy. The Danes, surprised to see an army of English, whom they considered as totally subdued, and still more astonished to hear that Alfred was at their head, made but a faint

resistance, notwithstanding their superiority of number, and were soon put to flight with great slaughter.

11. The remainder of the routed army, with their prince, was besieged by Alfred in a fortified camp, to which they fled; but being reduced to extremity by want and hunger, they had recourse to the 'clemency of the victor, and offered to submit on any conditions. The king, no less generous than brave, gave them their lives; and even formed a scheme for converting them from mortal enemies into faithful subjects and 'confederates. He knew that the kingdoms of East Anglia and Northumbria were totally desolated by the frequent inroads of the Danes; and he now purposed to repeople them by settling there Guthrum and his followers. He hoped that the new planters would at last betake themselves to industry, when, by reason of his resistance and the exhausted condition of the country, they could no longer subsist by plunder; and that they might serve him as a rampart against any future incursions of their countrymen.

12. But before he ratified these mild conditions with the Danes, he required that they should give him one pledge of their submission and of their inclination to 'incorporate with the English, by declaring their conversion to Christianity. Guthrum and his army had no aversion to the proposal; and without much instruction, or argument, or conference, they were all admitted to baptism. The king answered for Guthrum at the font, gave him the name of *Æthelstan*, and received him as his adopted son.

13. The success of this expedient seemed to correspond to Alfred's hopes: the greater part of the Danes settled peaceably in their new quarters; some smaller 880 bodies of the same nation, which were dispersed in A.D. Mercia, were distributed into the five cities of Derby, Leicester, Stamford, Lincoln, and Nottingham, and were thence called the *Fif* or *Five Burgers*. The more 'turbulent

and unquiet made an expedition into France under the command of Hastings; and except by a short incursion of Danes, who sailed up the Thames and landed at Fulham,<sup>7</sup> but suddenly retreated to their ships on finding the country in a posture of defence, Alfred was not for some years infested by the inroads of those barbarians.

DAVID HUME: *History of England.*

a-ban'doned, given up; deserted.  
ap-pre-hen'sive, in fear.  
clem-en-cy, kindness; mercy.  
con-fed'er-ates, allies.  
con-so-la'tion, comfort.  
de-spon-den-cy, low spirits; dejection.  
dis-so-lute, unchecked; wanton.  
em'is-sa-ries, messengers.  
en-vi'roned, surrounded.  
ex-hor-ta'tions, advices.  
fa-ce'tious, witty.  
in-ac-ces-si-ble, not easily reached.

in-cor-po-rate, unite; mingle; amalgamate.  
in-tol-er-a-ble, unbearable.  
rav-ag-ers, spoilers; destroyers.  
re-lin-quish, give up; abandon.  
ren-dez-vous (*rang-dai-vü*), meeting.  
stip-u-late, bargain. [place.  
strait-ened, confined.  
sub-sist-ence, living; keep.  
symp-toms, signs.  
tur-bu-lent, restless; unsettled.  
up-braid-ed, taunted.  
ven-er-a'tion, respect; reverence.

<sup>1</sup> Rep'ton, 7 miles south-west of Derby.

<sup>2</sup> Ware'ham, on Poole Harbour, near the south coast.

<sup>3</sup> Chip'penham, in the north of Wilts, 14 miles north-east of Bath.

<sup>4</sup> Æth'el'inga-y, properly Æthel-inga-ig, the Isle of the Æthelings or Princes.

<sup>5</sup> Brix'ton, Brixton - Deverill, in

Wilts, 4 miles south of Warminster. The name is a contraction of *Ecbrightes-stan*—that is, Ecgeberht's stone.

<sup>6</sup> Ed'ington, properly *Ethandun*, in Wilts, 3½ miles north-east of Westbury.

<sup>7</sup> Ful'ham, in the borough of Chelsea, and nearly opposite to Putney. The palace of Fulham has been a residence of the bishops of London since the time of Henry VII

## 8.—HAROLD'S OATH.

[The story of Harold's oath to William of Normandy, pledging himself to support William's claim to the throne of England, is not mentioned by any of the Old English writers; but they had an obvious motive for concealing the fact. It rests entirely on the authority of the Norman writers, who give contradictory accounts of it, suggesting that they are different versions of a true story, and not baseless inventions. The incident is placed in the year 1064. Edward the Confessor was then king of England. He was childless, and the only male heir of the house of Ecgeberht was Edgar the Ætheling, grandson of Edmund Ironside, then a weakly boy. Edward, whose mother was a Norman princess, had spent most of his life in Normandy, and had probably encouraged Duke William's pretensions to his crown. It is said that, in the year in question, Harold, while sailing in the Channel, was shipwrecked on the coast of Ponthieu (*between Normandy and Flanders*), and was arrested by Guy, count of that prov-

ince. Duke William forced Guy, who was his vassal, to deliver Harold into his hands, and offered the latter his release on condition of his binding himself to aid the duke in his attempt on the English crown.]

SCENE.—The Palace of the Duke of Normandy at Bayeux.

William, Harold, Malet (a Norman noble), Wulfnoth (Harold's brother).

*William.* Why then the heir of England, who is he?

*Harold.* The Atheling<sup>1</sup> is nearest to the throne.

*Will.* But sickly, slight, half-witted and a child,  
Will England have him King?

*Har.* It may be, no.

*Will.* And hath King Edward not 'pronounced his heir?

*Har.* Not that I know.

*Will.* When he was here in Normandy,  
He loved us and we him, because we found him  
A Norman of the Normans.

*Har.* So did we.

*Will.* A gentle, 'gracious, pure and saintly man!  
And, grateful to the hand that shielded him,  
He 'promised that if ever he were king  
In England, he would give his kingly voice  
To me as his successor. Knowest thou this?

*Har.* I learn it now.

*Will.* Thou knowest I am his cousin,<sup>2</sup>  
And that my wife descends from Alfred?<sup>3</sup>

*Har.* Ay.

*Will.* Who hath a better claim then to the crown,  
So that ye will not crown the Atheling?

*Har.* None that I know...if that but hung upon  
King Edward's will.

*Will.* Wilt *thou* uphold my claim?

*Malet (aside to Harold).* Be careful of thine answer, my  
good friend.

*Wulfnoth (aside to Harold).* Oh! Harold, for my sake and  
for thine own!

*Har.* Ay...if the King have not 'revoked his promise.

*Will.* But hath he done it then?

*Har.* Not that I know.

*Will.* Good, good, and thou wilt help me to the crown?

*Har.* Ay...if the Witan<sup>4</sup> will consent to this.

*Will.* Thou art the mightiest voice in England, man,  
Thy voice will lead the Witan—shall I have it?  
*Wulfnoth (aside to Harold).* Oh! Harold, if thou love thine  
Edith,<sup>5</sup> ay.

*Har.* Ay, if—

*Malet (aside to Harold).* Thine “ifs” will sear thine eyes  
out—ay.

*Will.* I ask thee, wilt thou help me to the crown?  
And I will make thee my great Earl of Earls,  
Foremost in England and in Normandy;  
Thou shalt be verily king—all but the name—  
For I shall most ‘sojourn in Normandy;  
And thou be my vice-king in England. Speak.

*Wulfnoth (aside to Harold).* Ay, brother—for the sake of  
England—ay.

*Har.* My Lord—

*Malet (aside to Harold).* Take heed now.

*Har.*

*Ay.*

*Will.* I am content,  
For thou art truthful, and thy word thy bond.  
To-morrow will we ride with thee to Hartleur.<sup>6</sup>

[*Exit William.*]

*Malet.* Harold, I am thy friend, one life with thee;  
And even as I should bless thee saving mine,  
I thank thee now for having saved thyself.

[*Exit Malet.*]

*Har.* For having lost myself to save myself;  
Said “Ay” when I meant “No;” lied like a lad  
That dreads the ‘pendent scourge; said “Ay” for  
“No”!

Ay! No!—he hath not bound me by an oath—  
Is “Ay” an oath? is “Ay” strong as an oath?  
Or is it the same sin to break my word  
As break mine oath? He called my word my bond!  
He is a liar who knows I am a liar,  
And makes believe that he believes my word—  
The crime be on his head—not bounden—no.

[*Suddenly doors are flung open, discovering in an  
inner hall Count William in his state robes,*

*seated upon his throne, between two Bishops,  
Odo of Bayeux being one: in the centre of  
the hall an ark covered with cloth of gold;  
and on either side of it the Norman barons.*

*Enter a Jailer before William's throne.*

*Will. (to Jailer).* Knave, hast thou let thy prisoner scape?

*Jailer.*

Sir Count,

He had but one foot, he must have hopt away;

Yea, some familiar spirit must have helped him.

*Will.* Woe, knave, to thy 'familiar, and to thee!

Give me thy keys.

*[They fall clashing.]*

Nay, let them lie. Stand there and wait my will.

*[The Jailer stands aside.]*

*Will. (to Harold).* Hast thou such trustless jailers in thy North?

*Har.* We have few prisoners in mine earldom there,  
So less chance for false keepers.

*Will.*

We have heard

Of thy just, mild, and equal 'governance;

Honour to thee! thou art perfect in all honour!

Thy naked word thy bond! confirm it now

Before our gathered Norman 'baronage,

For they will not believe thee—as I believe.

*[Descends from his throne and stands by the ark.]*

Let all men here bear witness of our bond!

*[Beckons to Harold, who advances. Enter Malet behind him.]*

Lay thou thy hand upon this golden pall!

Behold the jewel of St. Pancratius

Woven into the gold. Swear thou on this!

*Har.* What should I swear? Why should I swear on this?

*Will. (savagely).* Swear thou to help me to the crown of England.

*Malet (whispering Harold).* My friend, thou hast gone too far to 'palter now.

*Wulfnoth (whispering Harold).* Swear thou to-day, to-morrow is thine own.

*Har.* I swear to help thee to the crown of England...

According as King Edward promises.

*Will.* Thou must swear 'absolutely, noble Earl.

*Malet (whispering).* Delay is death to thee, ruin to England.

*Wulfnoth (whispering).* Swear, dearest brother, I beseech thee,  
swear!

*Har. (putting his hand on the jewel).* I swear to help thee to the  
crown of England.

*Will.* Thanks, truthful Earl: I did not doubt thy word,  
But that my barons might believe thy word,  
And that the holy saints of Normandy,  
When thou art home in England with thine own,  
Might strengthen thee in keeping of thy word,  
I made thee swear.—Show him by whom he hath  
sworn.

[*The two Bishops advance, and raise the cloth of  
gold. The bodies and bones of Saints' are  
seen lying in the ark.*]

The holy bones of all the 'canonized  
From all the holiest shrines in Normandy!

*Har.* Horrible. [They let the cloth fall again.

*Will.* Ay, for thou hast sworn an oath  
Which, if not kept, would make the hard earth rive  
To the very Devil's horns, the bright sky cleave  
To the very feet of God, and send her hosts  
Of injured saints to scatter sparks of plague  
Through all your cities, blast your infants, dash  
The torch of war among your standing corn,  
Dabble your hearths with your own blood.—Enough!  
Thou wilt not break it! I, the Count, the King—  
Thy friend—am grateful for thine honest oath,  
Not coming fiercely like a 'conqueror, now,  
But softly as a bridegroom to his own.  
For I shall rule according to your laws,  
And make your ever-jarring earldoms move  
To music and in order—Angle, Jute,  
Dane, Saxon, Norman, help to build a throne  
Out-towering hers of France...The wind is fair  
For England now...To-night we will be merry.

To-morrow will I ride with thee to Harfleur.

[*Exeunt William and all the Norman barons, &c.*

ALFRED TENNYSON: *Harold, a Drama.*

ab'-so-lute-ly, without conditions at-  
tached.

bar-on-age, the whole body of barons.

can'-on-ized, placed in the list of  
saints.

con'-quer-or, victor.

dis-cov'-er-ing, showing; revealing.

fa-mil'-iar, an evil spirit.

gov'-er-nance, rule.

gra'-ci-ous, kindly.

pal'-ter, to hesitate; shift; dodge.

pen'-dent, hanging; threatening.

prom'-ised, engaged; pledged himself.

pro-nounced', named.

re-voked', recalled; withdrawn.

so'-journ, dwell.

<sup>1</sup> The Ath'eling, Edgar, son of Edward the Stranger, who was son of Edmund Ironside. "The Atheling" was the title of the eldest son of the Old English kings. It was erroneously supposed to be the surname of Edgar who is known in history as "Edgar Atheling."

<sup>2</sup> I am his cousin.—Edward's mother was Emma of Normandy, sister of Duke William's grandfather. Edward and William were therefore second cousins.

<sup>3</sup> My wife descends from Alfred.—Alfred's daughter Alfritha married Baldwin, Count of Flanders; and Matilda of Flanders, William's wife, was sixth in descent from her.

<sup>4</sup> The Wit'an, the Old English legislative body, or parliament; properly called *Witena-gemot*, "the meeting of wise men."

<sup>5</sup> Thine Edith, Harold's wife.

<sup>6</sup> To Har'fleur, a port on the Seine (8 miles from Havre), from which the voyage to England was then usually made. William's words mean that if Harold gives him the promise he asks, he will at once allow him to return to England.

<sup>7</sup> The bodies and bones of Saints. Harold thought he had sworn only on "the jewel of St. Pancratius," an oath which would have been revocable; but the oath sworn on the relics of saints was irrevocable.

## 9.—THE LAST OLD ENGLISH KING.

[Edward the Confessor died on January 5, 1066, and Harold was at once chosen King by the Witan. William of Normandy denounced Harold for having broken his oath, and resolved to wrest the crown from him by force of arms. His preparations occupied many months. Shortly before he landed, Tostig, Harold's outlawed brother, accompanied by Harold Hardrada, King of Norway, invaded Northumbria and captured York. Harold advanced against them, and on September 25th both were killed in the Battle of Stamford Bridge. Four days later, Harold learned that Duke William had landed at Pevensey, 10 miles south-west of Hastings, on the coast of Sussex, with a powerful and well-appointed army. He at once marched southward, in order to place himself between William and London. On October 13th the English army reached Senlac Hill, and found the Norman host encamped on the Hill of Telham, a few miles off.]

1. All night the armies lay encamped before each other, in a part of the country then called Senlac,<sup>1</sup> now called (in remembrance of them) Battle.<sup>2</sup> With the first dawn





of day they arose. There, in the faint light, were the English on Senlac Hill, a wood behind them, in their midst two royal banners;—one the Golden Dragon of Wessex; the other King Harold's 'standard, 'representing a Fighting Warrior, woven in gold thread, 'adorned with precious stones.

2. Beneath these banners, as they rustled in the wind, stood King Harold on foot, with two of his brothers by his side; around them, still and silent as the dead, 'clustered the whole English army—every soldier covered by his shield, and bearing in his hand his dreaded English battle-axe.

3. On the opposite hill of Telham, in three lines—archers, foot-soldiers, horsemen—was the Norman force. On a sudden, a great battle-cry, "God help us!" burst from the Norman lines. The English answered with their own battle-cry, "God Almighty!" "Holy Rood!"<sup>s</sup> The Normans then came sweeping down the hill to attack the English; for King Harold had ordered his men to keep their ground, and on no account to be tempted to leave their ranks. It had been well for the English had they obeyed that order!

4. There was one tall Norman knight who rode before

the Norman army on a 'prancing horse, throwing up his heavy sword and catching it, and singing of the bravery of his countrymen. An English knight who rode out from the English force to meet him, fell by this knight's hand. Another English knight rode out, and he fell too. But then a third rode out, and killed the Norman. This was in the first beginning of the fight. It soon raged everywhere.

5. The English, keeping side by side in a great mass, cared no more for the showers of Norman arrows than if they had been showers of Norman rain. When the Norman horsemen rode against them, with their battle-axes they cut men and horses down. The Normans gave way. The English pressed forward. Duke William's horse fell under him, and a cry went forth among the Norman troops that he himself was killed. Duke William took off his helmet, in order that his face might be 'distinctly seen, and rode along the line before his men. This gave them courage.

6. As they turned again to face the English, some of their Norman horse divided the 'pursuing body of the English from the rest, and thus all that foremost portion of the English army fell, fighting bravely. The main body still remaining firm, heedless of the Norman arrows, and with their battle-axes cutting down the crowds of horsemen when they rode up, like forests of young trees, Duke William pretended to retreat. The eager English followed. The Norman army closed again, and fell upon them with great 'slaughter.

7. "Still," said Duke William, "there are thousands of the English firm as rocks around their king. Shoot upward, Norman archers, that your arrows may fall down upon their faces!" The sun rose high and sank, and the battle still raged. Through all the wild October day the clash and din 'resounded in the air. In the red sunset, and in the white moonlight, heaps upon heaps of dead men lay strewn—a dreadful 'spectacle—all over the ground.



## 10.—THE BATTLE OF HASTINGS.

1. Across the ocean's troubled breast  
The base-born Norman<sup>1</sup> came,  
To win for his helm a knightly crest,  
For his sons a kingly name;  
And in his warlike band  
Came flashing fair and free  
The brightest swords of his father's land,  
With the pomp of its 'chivalry.
2. What doth the foe on England's field?  
Why seeks he England's throne?  
Has she no chiefs her arms to wield,  
No warriors of her own?  
But, lo! in regal pride  
Stern Harold comes again,  
With the waving folds of his banner dyed  
In the blood of the hostile Dane.<sup>2</sup>
3. The song, the prayer, the feast were o'er,  
The stars in heaven were pale,  
And many a brow was bared once more  
To meet the morning gale.  
At length the sun's bright ray  
Tinged the wide east with gold,  
And the misty veil of the morning gray  
Away from his forehead rolled.
4. And all along each crowded tract  
His burning glance was thrown,  
Till the polished armour sent him back  
A lustre like his own.  
Still flashed the silver 'sheen  
Along the 'serried lines,  
Where the deadly wood of spears was seen  
To rise like forest-pines.

5. In either host was silence deep,  
Save the 'falchion's casual ring,  
When a sound arose like the first dread sweep  
Of the distant tempest's wing;  
Then burst the 'clamour out,  
Still maddening more and more,  
Till the air grew troubled with the shout,  
As it is at the thunder's roar.
6. And the war was roused by that fearful cry,  
And the hosts rushed wildly on,  
Like clouds that sweep o'er the gloomy sky  
When summer days are gone.  
Swift as the lightning's flame  
The furious horsemen passed,  
And the rattling showers of arrows came  
Like hailstones on the blast.
7. The Island 'Phalanx firmly trod  
On paths all red with gore;  
For the blood of their bravest stained the sod  
They proudly spurned before.  
But close and closer still  
They plied them blow for blow,  
Till the deadly stroke of the Saxon bill  
Cut loose the Norman bow.
8. And the 'stubborn foemen turned to flee,  
With the Saxons on their rear,  
Like hounds when they lightly cross the lea  
To spring on the fallow-deer.  
Each war-axe gleaming bright  
Made havoc in its sway;  
But in the mingled chase and flight  
They lost their firm array.
9. From a mounted band of the Norman's best  
A 'vengeful cry arose;  
Their lances long were in the rest,  
And they dashed upon their foes—

On, on, in wild career :  
 Alas for England, then,  
 When the furious thrust of the horsemen's spear  
 Bore back the Kentish men !

10. They bore them back, that 'desperate band,  
 Despite of helm or shield ;  
 And the 'corselet bright and the gory brand  
 Lay strewed on the battle-field.  
 Fierce flashed the Norman's steel,  
 Though soiled by many a stain ;  
 And the iron tread of his courser's heel  
 Crushed down the 'prostrate slain.

11. But still for life the Saxons ply,  
 In hope, or in despair,  
 And their frantic leader's rallying cry  
 Rings in the noontide air.  
 He toils ; but toils in vain !  
 The fatal arrow flies,  
 The iron point has pierced his brain—  
 The Island Monarch dies.



12. The fight is o'er, and wide are spread  
 The sounds of the dismal tale ;  
 And many a heart has 'quailed with dread,  
 And many a cheek is pale.  
 The victor's fears are past,  
 The golden spoil is won,  
 And England's tears are flowing fast  
 In grief for England's son.

M'DOUGALL.

chiv'al-ry, body of knights ; knight-  
 clam-our, noise ; din. [hood.  
 corse-let, breastplate.  
 des-pe-rate, reckless ; daring ; furious.  
 fal-chion, sword.  
 pha-lanx, body of troops.

pros-trate, laid low ; overthrown.  
 quailed, sunk ; become depressed.  
 ser-ried, close ; crowded.  
 sheen, bright ; glittering.  
 stub-born, not easily moved ; obsti-  
 venge-ful, seeking vengeance. [nate.

<sup>1</sup> The base-born Norman.—Duke William ; so called because his mother had been a woman of low birth.

<sup>2</sup> The hostile Dane, Harold Har-  
 (632)

drada, King of Norway, who invaded Northumbria with Tostig, one of Harold's brothers, and was slain at Stamford Bridge, September 25, 1066.

## PART II.

FROM THE NORMAN CONQUEST TO THE  
ACCESSION OF HENRY VII.

## 1.—HEREWARD, THE ENGLISH OUTLAW.

[After the victory of Senlac, William marched toward London, where the Witan had chosen Edgar the Ætheling as King. On the Duke's approach, the chief supporters of Edgar fled; and William was crowned King of England on Christmas Day. Not, however, till five years later was he master of England. During these five years there were repeated disturbances in different parts of the country, caused by the efforts of the English to rid themselves of the Norman yoke. In 1067, during the absence of William in Normandy, there were revolts in the east, the west, and the north—the last under the Earls Edwin and Morcar, brothers-in-law of Harold, the late King. In the following year, the King of Denmark landed in Yorkshire, and was joined by the English exiles in Scotland, headed by Edgar the Ætheling. The insurgents seized York. In 1069, William got rid of the Danes by buying them off. He then retook York, drove the English northward, and laid waste the country between the Ouse and the Tyne. Thereafter the country was quiet till 1071.]

1. In 1071 the embers of civil war were again rekindled by the jealousy of William. During the late disturbance<sup>1</sup> Edwin and Morcar<sup>2</sup> had cautiously 'abstained from any communication with the insurgents. But if their conduct was 'unexceptionable, their influence was judged dangerous. In them the natives beheld the present hope, and the future liberators, of their country; and the King judged it 'expedient to allay his own apprehensions by securing their persons.

2. The attempt was made in vain. Edwin concealed himself; solicited aid from the friends of his family; and, 'eluding the 'vigilance of the Normans, endeavoured to escape towards the borders of Scotland. Unfortunately, the secret of his route was betrayed by three of his vassals: the temporary swell of a rivulet from the influx of the tide 'intercepted his flight, and he fell, with twenty of his faithful adherents, fighting against his pursuers. The

traitors presented his head to William, who rewarded their services with a sentence of perpetual banishment. The fate of his brother Morcar was different. He fled to the protection of Hereward, who had 'presumed to rear the banner of independence amidst the fens and 'morasses of Cambridgeshire.

3. The memory of Hereward was long dear to the people of England. The recital of his exploits gratified their vanity and 'resentment; and traditionary songs transmitted his fame to succeeding generations. His father, the lord of Born in Lincolnshire, unable to restrain the 'turbulence of his temper, had obtained an order for his banishment from Edward the Confessor; and the exile had earned in foreign countries the praise of a hardy and fearless warrior.

4. He was in Flanders at the period of the Conquest; but when he heard that his father was dead, and that his mother had been dispossessed of the lordship of Born by a foreigner, he returned in haste, collected the 1066 'vassals of the family, and drove the Norman from A.D. his paternal estates. The fame of the 'exploit increased the number of his followers: every man anxious to avenge his own wrongs, or the wrongs of his country, hastened to the standard of Hereward; a fortress of wood was erected in the Isle of Ely for the protection of their treasures; and a small band of outlaws, 'instigated by revenge, and emboldened by despair, set at defiance the whole power of the Conqueror.

5. Hereward, with several of his followers, had received the sword of knighthood from his uncle Brand, abbot of Peterborough. Brand died before the close of the year 1069; and William gave the abbey to Turolde, 1069 a foreign monk, who, with a guard of one hundred A.D. and sixty horsemen, proceeded to take possession. He had already reached Stamford, when Hereward resolved



to plunder the 'monastery. The Danes, who had passed the winter in the Humber, were now in the Wash; and Sbern, their leader, consented to join the outlaws. The town of Peterborough was burned; the monks were 'dispersed; the treasures which they had concealed were discovered; and the abbey was given to the flames. Hereward retired to his asylum. Sbern sailed towards Denmark.

6. To remove these 'importunate enemies, Turolf purchased the services of Ivo Tailbois, to whom the Conqueror had given the district of Hoyland. Confident of success, the abbot and the Norman commenced the expedition with a numerous body of cavalry. But nothing could elude the vigilance of Hereward. As Tailbois entered one side of a thick wood, the chieftain issued from the other, darted 'unexpectedly upon Turolf, and carried him off with several other Normans, whom he confined in damp and unwholesome dungeons, till the sum of two thousand pounds had been paid for their ransom.

7. For a while the pride of William 'disdained to notice the efforts of Hereward; but when Morcar and most of the exiles from Scotland<sup>s</sup> had joined that chieftain, **1071** prudence compelled him to crush the 'hydra before A.D. it could grow to 'maturity. He stationed his fleet in the Wash, with orders to observe every outlet from the fens to the ocean: by land he 'distributed his forces in such manner as to render escape almost impossible. Still the great difficulty remained to reach the enemy, who had retired to their fortress, situated in an 'expanse of water which in the narrowest part was more than two miles in breadth.

8. The King undertook to construct a solid road across the marshes, and to throw bridges over the channels of the rivers; a work of considerable labour and of equal danger, in the face of a vigilant and 'enterprising enemy. Hereward frequently 'dispersed the workmen; and his attacks

were so sudden, so 'incessant, and so destructive, that the Normans attributed his success to the assistance of Satan. At the instigation of Tailbois, William had the weakness to employ a sorceress, who was expected, by the superior efficacy of her spells, to defeat those of the English magicians. She was placed in a wooden turret at the head of the work; but Hereward, who had watched his opportunity, set fire to the dry reeds in the neighbourhood; the wind rapidly spread the 'conflagration, and the enchantress with her gourds, the turret with the workmen, were enveloped and consumed in the flames.

9. These checks might irritate the King; they could not divert him from his purpose. In defiance of every 'obstacle, the work advanced: it was evident that in a few days the Normans would be in possession of the island, and the greater part of the outlaws 'voluntarily submitted to the royal mercy. Their fate was different. Of some he accepted the ransom; a few suffered death; many lost an eye, a hand, or a foot; and several, among whom were Morcar and the Bishop of Durham, were condemned to perpetual imprisonment.

10. Hereward alone could not brook the idea of submission. He escaped across the marshes, concealed himself in the woods, and as soon as the royal army had retired, resumed hostilities against the enemy. But the King, who had learned to respect his valour, was not averse to a 'reconciliation. The chieftain took the oath of allegiance, and was permitted to enjoy in peace the patrimony of his ancestors. Hereward was the last Englishman who had drawn the sword in the cause of independence.

JOHN LINGARD: *History of England*.

**ab-stained'**, held back; forborne.  
**con-fla-gra-tion**, flames.  
**dis-dained'**, scorned.  
**dis-persed'**, scattered.  
**dis-trib-ut-ed**, divided; spread out.  
**e-ld-ing**, avoiding; escaping.

**en-ter-pris-ing**, bold; pushing.  
**ex-panse'**, a wide space.  
**ex-pe-di-ent**, fit; proper; advisable.  
**ex-ploit'**, feat; deed.  
**hy-dra**, a monster with many heads.  
**im-port-u-nate**, pressing; urgent.

in-ces'sant, constant.  
 in-sti-gāt-ed, prompted.  
 in-ter-cept-ed, cut off; stopped.  
 ma-tu-ri-ty, full growth; ripeness.  
 mon'as-ter-y, a convent occupied by monks.  
 mo-rass-es, marshes.  
 ob-sta-cle, hindrance.  
 pre-sumed', ventured.

rec-on-cil-i-a'-tion, agreement; re-union.  
 re-sent'-ment, hatred.  
 tur-bu-lence, unruliness.  
 un-ex-cep-tion-a-ble, faultless.  
 un-ex-pect-ed-ly, suddenly.  
 vas-sals, retainers.  
 vig-i-lance, watchfulness.  
 vol-un-ta-ri-ly, of their own accord.

<sup>1</sup> The late disturbance, the rising of 1068-69, described above.

<sup>2</sup> Ed'win and Mor'car, Earls of Mercia and Northumbria respectively. They were sons of Ælfgar, Earl of the Mercians, whose daughter, Ealdgyth, was the wife of King Harold.

<sup>3</sup> Exiles from Scot'land.—At the time of the Norman Conquest, many of

the English who were deprived of their lands took refuge in Scotland. These were the "exiles from Scotland" who joined Hereward. Chief of them were the members of the Old English royal family. One of these, the Princess Margaret, a sister of Edgar the Ætheling, became Queen of Scotland, having married Malcolm III.

## 2.—WILLIAM RUFUS AND ANSELM.

[William I. died in 1087. Two of his sons occupied the throne in succession,—William II. and Henry I. During their reigns there arose a great struggle between the Crown and the Church, which troubled England for many a day. It originated in the attempt of Rufus to seize the property of the Church. When the see of Canterbury fell vacant by the death of Lanfranc in 1089, the king did not appoint a successor, but appropriated the revenues of the see. Four years later, in a fit of remorse caused by illness, William forced Anselm to accept the see, but quarrelled with him immediately afterwards. This quarrel is described in the following passage. The dispute was aggravated by Anselm's acknowledgment of Urban II. as pope, while William favoured the rival pope Guibert. In 1097 Anselm quitted England. Henry I. recalled him in 1100; but the quarrel was soon renewed, on the subject of investiture. Henry claimed the right of investing bishops and abbots with the badge of office, as well as of receiving homage from them. Anselm refused the former, and in 1103 again left England. He returned, however, in 1106, and then Henry gave up his right to investiture, but retained his right to homage.]

1. The storm which Anselm had looked for soon broke.  
 1093 'Symptoms of it had shown themselves even before  
 A.D. his 'consecration. On the very day of his enthronement at Canterbury, the joy of the people was disturbed by the appearance of the hateful and dreaded Ralph Flambard,<sup>1</sup> who came to 'institute a suit against the archbishop in the king's name. And they were 'irreconcilably separated. Anselm, on his consecration, had with difficulty raised five hundred marks on his wasted estates<sup>2</sup> in

order to make William the customary present. The king thought the sum too small, and, as his wont was when he was offended, refused it. Anselm went to him and pressed him to take it: though small, it was offered freely, nor would it be the last; but he intimated plainly that he would not fall in with the king's system of 'extortion.

2. "As a friend," he said, "you may do what you like with me and mine: on the footing of a slave, neither me nor mine shall you have." "Keep your money and foul tongue to yourself; I have enough for myself: go, get you gone," was the king's answer, in his rough and broken way. Anselm left him. He thought, says Eadmer,<sup>3</sup> of the words of the gospel, which had been read on the day when he first entered his cathedral, "No man can serve two masters." "No one now, at least," he said, "can accuse me of simony."<sup>4</sup> The present which I meant for him shall go now, not to him, but to Christ's poor, for the benefit of his soul." He tried, however, once more to regain the king's favour, but he was told that the only way was to double his present: about this he was firm, and he left the court in disgrace.

3. William was beyond measure 'irritated at this 'resolute opposition from a clergyman, an old feeble monk, one, too, whom he himself had in a moment of weakness placed in the position to annoy him; but nothing was done for the present to 'molest Anselm. He held on his course, discharging the duties of his office: in the country, living among his tenants, and writing on theology; at court, preaching against its luxury and 'effeminate fashions, and refusing absolution to the disobedient: doing whatever he could to repair the mischiefs of the last six years. But his single efforts were vain against the frightful 'licence which prevailed, and the other bishops kept aloof from him. *His only hope was a synod. Could a council be*

summoned, men might speak and act in concert who would not act separately.

4. The court was at Hastings, waiting for a wind to carry over the king to Normandy, and the bishops had been 'summoned thither to give him their blessing when he sailed. Anselm resolved to make one more effort to move William. He went to him, and solemnly laid before him the state of things in England. "Christian religion," he said, "had well nigh perished among the people, and the land was become almost a Sodom; the only remedy was in a council of the Church." William refused to hear of it.

5. Anselm then entreated him at least to appoint abbots to the vacant and 'disorganized monasteries. "What are they to you?" was the fierce answer. "The abbeys, are they not mine? May I not do as I please with them, as you do with your manors?" "Yours they are," said Anselm, "to protect, but not to lay waste; for they belong to God,—to maintain his servants, not to support your wars." "Your 'predecessor dared not have held such language to my father," was the reply. "Go, I will do nothing for you." Anselm retired and consulted the bishops. They could suggest no other advice than that of 'purchasing the king's favour. The archbishop indignantly rejected it: for the honour of the Church, in justice to his poor tenants, on mere grounds of policy, he could not listen to so unworthy an 'expedient. "My vassals," said he, "have been plundered and made a prey since Lanfranc's death, and I have nothing to give them: shall I further go on to flay them alive?"

6. The bishops 'recommended him to give, at least, the five hundred marks which he had originally offered. "No," said he; "he has refused it once: it is gone to the poor now." William was furious when this was reported to him. "Go tell him," was his message, "that I hated him yester-

day: henceforth I will hate him daily more and more. Father and archbishop he shall be to me no longer. Let him not wait here to give me his blessing. I will cross without it."

7. Such was the opening of the great trial of strength between the Church and feudalism<sup>5</sup> in England. This apparently petty dispute about five hundred marks led on, by a series of close and obvious consequences, to the opening of those great questions between the spiritual and temporal powers, questions among the highest that can engage men's thoughts, which even in our own day remain unsettled.

RICHARD CHURCH: *Essays and Reviews*.

con-se-cra-tion, setting apart to a sacred office.

con-se-quen-cies, events following.

dis-or-gan-ized, out of order.

ef-fem-i-nate, woman-like; weak; un-

ex-pe-di-ent, plan; device. [manly.

ex-tor-tion, wresting of money.

in-sti-tute, begin; open.

ir-rec-on-cil-a-bly, without hope of being reunited; hopelessly.

ir-ri-tat-ed, enraged; angry.

li-cence, excess of liberty; vice.

mo-lest, annoy; harass.

pred-e-ces-sor, last preceding holder of the same office.

pur-chas-ing, buying.

rec-om-mend-ed, advised.

res-o-lute, firm; decided.

sum-moned, called.

symp-toms, signs; marks.

<sup>1</sup> Ralph Flambard, or Ralph the Torch, a Norman priest who was the chief agent of Rufus's extortions. He was afterwards created Bishop of Durham.

<sup>2</sup> His wasted estates, the lands of the see of Canterbury, which had been plundered by the king's emissaries during the vacancy between Lanfranc's death and the appointment of Anselm as his successor.

<sup>3</sup> Eadmer, an early English historian, who wrote the life of Anselm. He also wrote lives of St. Dunstan and St. Wilfred. In 1120 he was elected

Archbishop of St. Andrews in Scotland, but he was never consecrated. He died in 1124.

<sup>4</sup> Simony, the crime of buying or selling livings in the Church; so called from Simon Magus, who offered the apostles money in exchange for the gift of the Holy Ghost. (Acts viii. 18-20.)

<sup>5</sup> Feudalism, the system of tenure of land by military service—all lands belonging, in the first instance, to the king, and being by him apportioned to his vassals, and by them to their subvassals and retainers.

## 3.—DEATH OF BECKET.

[The quarrel between the Crown and the Church, begun by Anselm, was renewed by Becket, who became Archbishop of Canterbury in 1162, in the reign of Henry II. The dispute related to Henry's demand that priests should be subject to the ordinary civil courts. Becket opposed this, and insisted that churchmen should be tried only by the ecclesiastical courts, even for civil offences. The Constitutions of Clarendon (1164) gave expression to the king's wishes. Becket first assented to the Constitutions, then retracted his assent and fled to France. In 1170 he returned to England, and excommunicated all persons who held the lands of his see. On hearing of this, Henry, then in Normandy, expressed a desire to be rid of the turbulent priest. Four knights who heard him thereupon took an oath to slay Becket, and immediately returned to England for the purpose.]

1. As the Archbishop entered the north 'transept of the cathedral, the knights<sup>1</sup> were seen at the farther end of the 'cloister in pursuit of him. The 'vesper service had begun, when two boys ran wildly into the 'choir, "announcing," says William of Canterbury, "rather by their affright  
1170 than by their words, that the enemies were about to  
A.D. break in." On this the monks left the choir, and hurried towards the transept, where they expressed great joy at seeing the Archbishop alive, as they had supposed him to be already slain; but he ordered them to return to their proper place and resume their office, saying that otherwise he would again leave the church.

2. 'Perceiving that some of his followers were beginning to fasten the doors behind him, he charged them on their obedience to leave them open, declaring that God's house ought not to be turned into a fortress, but was sufficient for the 'protection of its own. "Let all come in who will," he said; and with his own hands he set the doors open, thrust back the crowd who pressed around, and drew in such of his own immediate followers as were still without in the cloister. At length he was forced away, just as the knights were about to enter; but, although he was urged to make his escape, and might easily have done so, as night was coming on and the cathedral had many hiding-places and outlets, he 'absolutely refused to withdraw.

3. The monks had hurried him up four of the steps which led to the choir, as if he were proceeding to the altar at which he usually heard the services of the church, when Fitzurse rushed in from the cloister, shouting out, "After me, King's men!" Close behind him came the other three, all, like himself, in complete armour (except that Tracy, in order to be lighter, had left his 'hauberk behind); Tracy, Morville, and Le Breton carrying battle-axes, while Fitzurse still held a 'carpenter's hatchet, which, however, as it was not required for breaking open the door, he now cast on the 'pavement. The four were followed by a party of soldiers, more or less completely armed, and by some of the Canterbury people, who had been pressed into the service.

4. As they entered, one of them charged the monks around him not to stir; and Fitzurse went to the right hand, while the others placed themselves on the left.

"Where," cried Fitzurse in the dimness of the faintly-lighted cathedral, "is the traitor, Thomas Becket?" and as no answer was 'vouchsafed to this question, he laid hold of a monk, and asked, "Where is the Archbishop?"

"Here I am," answered Becket; "no traitor, but a priest of God: if ye seek me, ye have found me. What would you have?"

5. Descending from the step on which he stood, he placed himself with his back against a pillar, near the opening of a small chapel, in which stood the altar of St. Benedict. The knights required him to 'absolve the 'ex-communicated and 'suspended bishops.

"Never," he replied, "will I absolve those who have not made satisfaction of their offences."

"You are our prisoner," cried Fitzurse; "you shall come with us!" and the knights pressed closer to him, with the intention of placing him on the shoulders of Tracy, and so *removing him from the church.*



6. "I will not go," he replied; "you shall do here what you wish and have been ordered\* to do: but in God's name, and under pain of 'anathema, I charge you to touch none of my people." As Fitzurse laid hold of his pall, the Archbishop violently threw him off; and he afterwards seized Tracy, whom he shook with such force as to lay him on the ground.

7. "Strike! strike!" cried Fitzurse to his companions; and with the point of his sword he dashed off the Archbishop's cap. Tracy then raised his sword, and Grim (a young monk of Cambridge), wrapping his arm in a cloak, lifted it up to ward off the stroke; but the weapon almost severed the monk's arm, and descending on the Archbishop's head, cut off the 'tonsured part of his crown, which remained hanging only by the skin to the scalp. Being thus disabled, Grim took refuge at the nearest altar, to which many others were already clinging in an extremity of terror. Fitzurse then let fall a heavy blow; another blow from Tracy brought the Archbishop to his knees, and as he fell, with his hands joined in prayer, repeating that he was ready to die for Christ and his Church, and commending his soul to God, Le Breton 'inflicted a fourth stroke, accompanying it with the words, "Take that, for the sake of my Lord William, the King's brother!" The sword cut off the remaining part of the tonsure, and lighted on the pavement with such force that its point was broken off.

8. When the deed was done, one Hugh Mauclerc, of Horsea, a subdeacon attached to the household of the Brocs, who had 'accompanied the murderers in a military dress, put his foot on the neck of the corpse, and with the point of his sword, drawing out the brains from the 'severed crown, scattered them on the pavement. "Let us be off, comrades!" he cried; "this traitor will never rise again." *The murderers rushed out of the church, shouting, "King's*

---

soldiers! King's men!" a cry which they had repeatedly used in the course of the day, and which is said to have been 'customary on a battle-field after a victory. On the way to the palace they found a French servant of the Archdeacon of Sens lamenting the Archbishop, and cruelly wounded him as they passed. They hastily searched the palace, breaking open desks, presses, chests, and other 'repositories, and carrying off plate, money, jewels, vestments, and other valuable articles.

T. C. ROBERTSON: *Life of Thomas Becket.*

ab-so-lute-ly, positively; without reservation.	in-flict'-ed, gave; bestowed.
ab-solve', set free; release; forgive.	pave-ment, a stone floor.
ac-com-pa-nied, gone with; at-	per-ceive-ing, seeing; observing.
a-nath-e-ma, a curse. [tended.	pro-tec-tion, defence; safety.
car-pen-ter, one who works in timber.	re-pos-i-to-ries, places for storing things.
choir, the part of a church set apart for the singers.	sev-ered, laid open.
clois-ter, a covered arcade, or arched	sus-pend-ed, deprived of office for a time.
cus'-tom-a-ry, usual. [passage.	ton'-sured, shaven.
ex-com-mu-ni-cat-ed, excluded from the church.	tran'-sept, portion of a church at right angles to the body or nave.
hau'-berk, a shirt of mail, formed of steel rings.	ves-per, evening.
	vouch-safed', granted.

<sup>1</sup> **The Knights.**—The four knights who had sworn to put the Archbishop to death—Fitsurse, Tracy, Morville, and Le Breton.

<sup>2</sup> **Have been ordered.**—Becket believed that the knights had been ex-

pressly sent by the king to put him to death. This belief was very general in the Church at the time, and afterwards. In 1174 Henry did penance for the murder at Becket's shrine, in order to conciliate the Church.

#### 4.—CŒUR DE LION AT HIS FATHER'S BIER.

[Henry II. died in 1189, at Chinon, in France. During the later years of his reign he had been much troubled by the quarrels of his sons with one another and with himself. In 1174, his eldest son, Prince Henry, demanded the crown; and two other sons, Richard and Geoffrey, also took arms against him in France. In 1187, Richard rebelled a second time, and he was at war with his father at the time of the death of the latter. When he heard of this event he was overwhelmed with remorse and grief.]

1. Torches were blazing clear,  
Hymns 'pealing deep and slow,  
Where a king lay stately on his bier  
In the church of Fontevraud.<sup>1</sup>

Banners of battle o'er him hung,  
And warriors slept beneath,  
And light, as noon's broad light, was flung  
On the settled face of death.

2.     On the settled face of death  
       A strong and 'ruddy glare ;  
Though dimmed at times by the censer's breath,<sup>2</sup>  
       Yet it still fell brightest there :  
As if each deeply 'furrowed trace  
       Of earthly years to show,—  
Alas! that sceptred mortal's race  
       Had surely closed in woe!
3.     The marble floor was swept  
       By many a long dark 'stole,  
As the kneeling priests round him that slept  
       Sang mass for the parted soul ;  
And solemn were the strains they poured  
       Through the stillness of the night,  
With the cross above, and the crown and sword,  
       And the silent king in sight.
4.     There was heard a heavy clang  
       As of 'steel-girt men the tread,  
And the tombs and the hollow pavement rang  
       With a sounding thrill of dread ;  
And the holy chant was hushed a while,  
       As, by the torch's flame,  
A gleam of arms, up the sweeping aisle,  
       With a mail-clad leader came.
5.     He came with haughty look,  
       An eagle glance and clear ;  
But his proud heart through his breastplate shook,  
       When he stood beside the bier!  
He stood there still, with drooping brow,  
       And clasped hands o'er it raised ;  
For his father lay before him low—  
       *It was Cœur de Lion gazed!*

6.       And silently he strove  
          With the workings in his breast;  
But there's more in late 'repentant love  
          Than steel can keep 'suppressed!  
And his tears broke forth at last like rain;—  
          Men held their breath in awe,  
For his face was seen by his warrior-train,  
          And he 'recked not that they saw.
7.       He looked upon the dead,  
          And sorrow seemed to lie,  
A weight of sorrow even like lead,  
          Pale on the fast-shut eye.  
He stooped, and kissed the frozen cheek,  
          And the heavy hand of clay,  
Till bursting words, yet all too weak.  
          Gave his soul's 'passion way.
8.       " Oh, father! is it vain,  
          This late 'remorse and deep?  
Speak to me, father, once again:  
          I weep—behold, I weep!  
Alas, my guilty pride and 'ire!  
          Were but this work undone,  
I would give England's crown, my sire,  
          To have thee bless thy son!
9.       " Speak to me! mighty grief  
          Ere now the dust hath stirred!  
Hear me! but hear me, father, chief!  
          My king, I must be heard!—  
Hushed, hushed!—how is it that I call,  
          And that thou answerest not?  
When was it thus?—woe, woe for all  
          The love my soul forgot!
10.      " Thy silver hairs I see,  
          So still, so sadly bright!  
And father, father! but for me  
          *They had not been so white!*

I bore thee down, high heart! at last  
 No longer couldst thou strive;—  
 Oh, for one moment of the past  
 To kneel and say, 'Forgive!'

11. "Thou wert the noblest king  
 On royal throne e'er seen;  
 And thou didst wear,<sup>3</sup> in knightly ring,  
 Of all the stateliest 'mien;  
 And thou didst prove, where spears are proved,  
 In war, the bravest heart;—  
 Oh, ever the 'renowned and loved  
 Thou wert—and there thou art!
12. "Thou, that my boyhood's guide  
 Didst take fond joy to be!—  
 The times I've sported by thy side,  
 And climbed the parent-knee!  
 And there before the blessed 'shrine,  
 My sire, I see thee lie;—  
 How will that still, sad face of thine,  
 Look on me till I die!"

MRS. HEMANS.

**fur'-rowed**, marked with wrinkles  
**ire**, anger.  
**mien**, bearing; carriage.  
**pas-sion**, strong feeling.  
**peal'-ing**, sounding loudly.  
**recked**, cared; heeded.  
**re-morse'**, painful regret.

**re-nowned'**, famed.  
**re-pent'-ant**, showing sorrow.  
**rud'-dy**, red.  
**shrine**, altar.  
**steel'-girt**, clad in mail. [robe.  
**stole**, a long, loose garment; a priest's  
**sup-pressed'**, smothered; stifled.

<sup>1</sup> **Fon'tevraud** (*Fong'te-vrô*), a town in Anjou, in France. It is in the department Maine-et-Loire.

<sup>2</sup> **The censer's breath**.—The *censer* is a vessel in which incense is burned. By its *breath* is here meant

the smoke, which dimmed the light in the church.

<sup>3</sup> **And thou didst wear**.—Construe thus: "And thou didst wear a mien which was the stateliest of all in knightly ring."

## 5.—RICHARD I. IN PALESTINE.

[Richard I. succeeded his father Henry II. Richard's ambition was not to rule England, but to gain renown in Palestine by fighting against the Saracens, the enemies of the Cross. It was the era of the Crusades. The First Crusade (1096-99) had been so far successful; but the second (1147) had been a complete failure, and the object of Richard of England, who was associated with Philip Augustus of France, and the Emperor Frederic Barbarossa, was to wipe out that disgrace. The French were the first to arrive in Palestine, and they were engaged in the siege of Acre when the English joined them.]

1. The English army arrived in time to 'partake in the glory of the siege of Acre or Ptolemais,<sup>1</sup> which had been attacked for above two years by the united force of all the Christians in Palestine, and had been defended by the utmost efforts of Saladin<sup>2</sup> and the Saracens. 1191 The remains of the German army, conducted by the A.D. Emperor Frederic, and the separate bodies of adventurers who continually poured in from the West, had enabled the King of Jerusalem<sup>3</sup> to form this important 'enterprise; but Saladin, having thrown a strong garrison into the place under the command of Caracos, his own master in the art of war, and molesting the besiegers with continual attacks and 'sallies, had 'protracted the success of the enterprise, and wasted the force of his enemies.

2. The arrival of Philip and Richard inspired new life into the Christians; and these princes, acting by concert, and sharing the honour and danger of every action, gave hopes of a final victory over the infidels. They agreed on this plan of operations: when the French monarch attacked the town, the English guarded the trenches. Next day, when the English prince conducted the 'assault, the French succeeded him in providing for the safety of the 'assailants. The 'emulation between those rival kings and rival nations produced extraordinary acts of valour: Richard in particular, animated with a more 'precipitate courage than Philip, and more agreeable to the romantic spirit of that age, drew to himself the general attention, and acquired a

great and splendid 'reputation. But this 'harmony was of short duration; and occasions of discord soon arose between these jealous and haughty princes.

3. But notwithstanding these disputes, as the length of the siege had reduced the Saracen garrison to the last extremity, they surrendered themselves prisoners; 'stipulated, in return for their lives, other advantages to the Christians, such as the restoring of the Christian prisoners, and the delivery of the wood of the true cross; and this great enterprise, which had long engaged the attention of all Europe and Asia, was at last, after the loss of 300,000 men, brought to a happy period.

4. But Philip, instead of pursuing the hopes of further conquest, and of redeeming the Holy City from slavery, being disgusted with the 'ascendant assumed and acquired by Richard, and having views of many advantages which he might reap by his 'presence in Europe, declared his resolution of returning to France; and he pleaded his bad state of health as an excuse for his desertion of the common cause.

5. The Christian adventurers under Richard's command determined, on opening the 'campaign, to attempt the siege of Ascalon,<sup>4</sup> in order to prepare the way for that of Jerusalem; and they marched along the sea-coast with that intention. Saladin purposed to intercept their passage, and he placed himself on the road with an army amounting to 300,000 'combatants. On this occasion was fought one of the greatest battles of that age, and the most celebrated for the military genius of the commanders, for the number and valour of the troops, and for the great variety of events which attended it. Both the right wing of the Christians, commanded by D'Avesnes, and the left, conducted by the Duke of Burgundy, were, in the beginning of the day, broken and defeated; when Richard, who led *on the main body*, restored the battle; attacked the enemy

with 'intrepidity and presence of mind; performed the part both of a 'consummate general and gallant soldier; and not only gave his two wings leisure to recover their confusion, but obtained a complete victory over the Saracens, of whom forty thousand are said to have perished in the field.

6. Ascalon soon after fell into the hands of the Christians; other sieges were carried on with equal success; Richard was even able to advance within sight of Jerusalem, the object of his enterprise; when he had the 'mortification to find that he must abandon all hopes of immediate success, and must put a stop to his career of victory. The Crusaders, animated with an enthusiastic ardour for the holy wars, broke at first through all regards to safety or interest in the 'prosecution of their purpose; and trusting to the immediate assistance of Heaven, set nothing before their eyes but fame and victory in this world, and a crown of glory in the next. But long absence from home, fatigue, disease, want, and the variety of incidents which naturally attend war, had gradually abated that fury which nothing was able directly to withstand; and every one, except the King of England, expressed a desire of speedily returning into Europe.

7. The Germans and the Italians declared their resolution of 'desisting from the enterprise; the French were still more obstinate in this purpose; the Duke of Burgundy, in order to pay court to Philip, took all opportunities of mortifying and opposing Richard; and there appeared an absolute necessity of abandoning for the present all hopes of further conquest, and of securing the acquisitions of the Christians by an accommodation with Saladin. Richard, therefore, concluded a truce with that monarch, and stipulated that Acre, Joppa, and other seaport towns of Palestine, should remain in the hands of the Christians, and that every one of that religion should have *liberty to perform his pilgrimage to Jerusalem unmolested.*



This truce was concluded for three years, three months, three weeks, three days, and three hours ; a magical number which had probably been devised by the Europeans, and which was suggested by a superstition well suited to the object of the war.

8. There remained, after the truce, no business of importance to detain Richard in Palestine ; and the intelligence which he received concerning the 'intrigues of his brother John, and those of the King of France, made him sensible that his presence was necessary in Europe. As he dared not pass through France, he sailed to the Adriatic; and being shipwrecked near Aquileia,<sup>5</sup> he put on the disguise of a pilgrim, with a purpose of taking his journey secretly through Germany. Pursued by the governor of Istria,<sup>6</sup> he was forced out of the direct road to England, and was obliged to pass by Vienna, where his expenses and liberalities betrayed the monarch in the habit of the pilgrim, and he was arrested by orders of Leopold, Duke of Austria. This prince had served under Richard at the siege of Acre ; but being disgusted by some insult of that haughty monarch, he was so ungenerous as to seize the present opportunity of gratifying at once his 'avarice and revenge, and he threw the king into prison.

9. The Emperor Henry VI., who also considered Richard as an enemy on account of the alliance contracted by him with Tancred, King of Sicily, despatched messengers to the Duke of Austria, required the royal captive to be delivered to him, and stipulated a large sum of money as a reward for this service. Thus the King of England, who had filled the whole world with his renown, found himself, during the most critical state of his affairs, confined in a dungeon and loaded with irons in the heart of Germany, and entirely at the mercy of his enemies, the basest and most sordid of mankind.

DAVID HUME : History of England.

as-cend'-ant, higher power; superiority.  
 as-sail'-ants, persons attacking.  
 as-sault', attack.  
 av-a-ri-ce, greed.  
 cam-paign', season of fighting.  
 com-bat'-ants, fighting-men.  
 con-sum'-mate, highly skilled; perfect.  
 de-sist'-ing, leaving off.  
 em-u-la'-tion, rivalry.  
 en'-ter-prise, scheme; undertaking.  
 har-mo-ny, agreement.

in-tre-pid'-i-ty, courage; fearlessness.  
 in-trigues', plots.  
 mor-ti-fi-ca'-tion, vexation.  
 par-take', share.  
 pre-cip-i-tate, dashing; headlong.  
 pros-e-cu'-tion, following out.  
 pro-tract'-ed, delayed.  
 pur-sued', chased.  
 rep-u-ta'-tion, fame; character.  
 sal-lies, attacks by the besieged on the besiegers.  
 stip-u-lat'-ed, bargained.  
 un-mo-lest'-ed, undisturbed.

<sup>1</sup> A'cre, or Ptolema'is, a fortified sea-port on the coast of Syria, near the foot of Mount Carmel. It is famous for the number of its great sieges:—

1104, taken by the Crusaders.

1187, taken by the Saracens.

1191, taken by the Crusaders.

1291, taken by the Saracens.

1799, attacked by Napoleon I.

1832, taken by Ibrahim Pasha.

1840, taken by the English.

<sup>2</sup> Sal'adin, the Sultan of Egypt and Syria, head of the Saracens. He died at Damascus in 1192.

<sup>3</sup> The King of Jeru'salem, Guy de Lusignan, made king in 1186; but in

1187 he was defeated and taken prisoner by Saladin, to whom Jerusalem then surrendered.

<sup>4</sup> As'calon, a sea-port of Palestine, 45 miles south-west of Jerusalem. The ancient city is now quite deserted. Its defences were destroyed by Saladin.

<sup>5</sup> Aquilei'a, a town at the head of the Adriatic, now belonging to Austria and called *Aglar*. It was once the strongest fortress of the Roman Empire, and was called the "Second Rome."

<sup>6</sup> Is'tria, a peninsula at the head of the Adriatic, forming a province of Austro-Hungary. A line drawn from Trieste to Fiume forms its base.

## 6.—MAGNA CARTA.

[John succeeded Richard I. (his brother) in 1199. He made himself unpopular, first by causing (as was believed) the death of Prince Arthur, his nephew, and afterwards by the loss of all his French possessions, which were taken by the King of France (1204). He quarrelled with the Pope regarding the filling up of the vacant see of Canterbury, and brought on the country the papal Interdict, which lasted six years (1208–14). The Pope first excommunicated John, and then deposed him. At last John, to save his crown, submitted to the Pope and became his vassal. This, and John's promotion of foreigners to important posts in England, disgusted the English barons. They demanded from the King the observance of the Charter of Henry I., and on his refusal they took arms against him.]

1. During John's hasty journey to Durham and back, events ever memorable in English history had taken place. On the 4th of August the justiciar<sup>1</sup> Geoffrey Fitz-Peter held a *great assembly* at St. Albans,<sup>2</sup> at which attended not

only the great barons of the realm, but the representatives of the people of the townships of all the royal estates. The object of the gathering was to determine the sum due to the bishops as an 'indemnity for their losses. There, no doubt, the commons and the barons had full opportunity of discussing their grievances; and the justiciar undertook, in the name of his master, that the laws of Henry I. should be put in force. Not that they knew much about the laws of Henry I., but that the prevailing abuses were regarded as arising from the strong governmental system 'consolidated by Henry II., and they recurred to the state of things which preceded that reign, just as under Henry I. men had recurred to the reign and laws of Edward the Confessor.

2. On the 25th of the same month the Archbishop,<sup>3</sup> at a council of St. Paul's, actually produced the charter issued by Henry I. at his coronation, and proposed that it should be presented to the king as the 'embodiment of the institutions which he had promised to maintain. Upon this foundation Magna Carta was soon to be drawn up. Almost directly after this, in October, the justiciar died; and John, who had hailed the death of Hubert Walter as a relief from an unwelcome adviser, spoke of Geoffrey with a cruel mockery as gone to join his old fellow-minister in hell. Both had acted as restraints on his desire to rule despotically, and the last public act of Geoffrey Fitz-Peter had been to engage him to an undertaking which he was resolved not to keep.

3. But matters did not proceed very rapidly. It is more than a year before we hear much more of the baronial demands. The new legate<sup>4</sup> showed himself desirous to gratify the king; and although the northern barons still refused to go on foreign service, he managed to prevent an open struggle. The king went to Poitou<sup>5</sup> in February 1214, and did not return

until the next October. In the meanwhile the damages of the bishops were 'ascertained, and the 'Interdict taken off on the 29th of June.

4. The war on the Continent occupied men's minds a good deal. Philip won the battle of Bouvines<sup>6</sup> over the forces of Flanders, Germany, and England, on the 27th of July; and John did nothing in Poitou to make the north country barons regret their determination not to follow him. The great 'confederacy against Philip which Richard had planned, and which John had been labouring to bring to bear on his adversary, was defeated, and Philip stood forth for the moment as the mightiest king in Europe.

July 27,  
1214  
A.D.

5. Disappointed and ashamed, John returned, resolved to master the barons, and found them not only resolved but prepared, and organized to resist him, perhaps even encouraged by his ill success. They had found in Stephen Langton a leader worthy of the cause, and able to exalt and inform the defenders of it. Among those defenders were men of very various sorts: some who had personal aims merely; some who were fitted, by education, accomplishments, and patriotic sympathies, for national 'champions; some who were carried away by the general ardour. In general they may be divided into three classes: (1) those northern barons who had begun the quarrel; (2) the constitutional party, who joined the others in a great meeting held at St. Edmunds, in November 1214; and (3) those who adhered later to the cause, when they saw that the king was helpless.

6. It was the two former bodies that presented to him their demands a few weeks after he returned from France. He at once refused all, and began to 'manœuvre to divide the consolidated 'phalanx. First he tried to disable them by demanding the renewal of the homages throughout the country and the surrender of the castles. He next tried

to detach the clergy by granting a charter to secure the freedom of election to bishoprics; he tried to make terms with individual barons; he delayed meeting them from time to time; he took the cross, so that if any hand was raised against him it might be 'paralyzed by the cry of 'sacrilege; he wrote urgently to the Pope to get him to condemn the propositions, and 'excommunicate the persons, of the barons. They likewise presented their complaints at Rome, resisted all John's 'blandishments, and declined to relax one of their demands, or to give up one of their 'precautions.

7. Negotiations ceased, and preparations for war began about Easter 1215. The confederates met at Stamford, then marched to Brackley, Northampton, Bedford, 1215 Ware, and so to London, where they were received A.D. on the 24th of May. The news of their entry into

London determined the action of those who still seemed to adhere to the king, and they joined them, leaving him almost destitute of forces, attended by a few advisers whose hearts were with the insurgents, and a body of personal adherents who had little or no political weight beside their own unpopularity.

8. Then John saw himself compelled to yield, and he yielded: he consented to bind himself with promises in which there was nothing sincere but the 'reluctance with which he conceded them. Magna June 15, 1215 A.D.

Carta, the embodiment of the claims which the archbishop and barons had based on the charter of Henry I., was granted at Runnymede<sup>7</sup> on June 15, 1215.

9. Magna Carta was a treaty of peace between the king and his people, and so is a complete national act. It is the first act of the kind, for it differs from the charters issued by Henry I., Stephen, and Henry II., not only in its greater fulness and 'perspicuity, but by having a distinct machinery provided to carry it out. Twenty-five barons



were nominated to compel the king to fulfil his part. It was not, as has been sometimes said, a selfish attempt on the part of the barons and bishops to secure their own privileges; it provided that the commons of the realm should have the benefit of every advantage which the two elder estates had won for themselves, and it bound the barons to treat their own 'dependants as it bound the king to treat the barons.

10. Of its sixty-three articles, some provided securities for personal freedom: no man was to be taken, imprisoned, or damaged in person or estate, but by the judgment of his peers and by the law of the land. Others fixed the rate of payments due by the vassal to his lord. Others presented rules for national taxation and for the organization of a national council, without the consent of which the king could not tax. Others decreed the banishment of the 'alien servants of John. Although it is not the foundation of English liberty, it is the first, the clearest, the most united, and historically the most important of all the great 'enunciations of it; and it was a revelation of the possibility of freedom to the medieval world. The maintenance of the Charter becomes from henceforth the watchword of English freedom.

WILLIAM STUBBS: *The Early Plantagenets.*

**Al'-ien**, foreign.

**as-cer-tained'**, learned; found out.

**blan'-dish-ments**, winning words.

**cham-pl-ions**, heroes.

**con-fed'-er-a-cy**, league.

**con-sol'-i-dat-ed**, framed firmly.

**de-pen'-dants**, vassals; retainers.

**em-bod'-i-ment**, sum and substance; essence.

**e-nun-ci-a'-tions**, statements; proclamations. [church.

**ex-om-mu'-ni-cate**, exclude from the

**in-dem'ni-ty**, make up; amends.  
**in-ter-dict**, prohibition; order forbidding something.  
**man-œu-vre**, scheme; dodge.  
**par-a-lyzed**, made powerless; unnerved.

**per-spi-cu'i-ty**, clearness.  
**pha-lanx**, compact body.  
**pre-cau-tions**, careful measures; securities.  
**re-luc-tance**, unwillingness.  
**sac-ri-lege**, violating sacred things.

<sup>1</sup> **Justiciar**, a judge to whom the king delegated his power of hearing and deciding cases, before the erection of the courts of King's Bench and the Common Pleas.

<sup>2</sup> **St. Al'bans**, 21 miles north-west of London.

<sup>3</sup> **The Archbishop**, Stephen Langton; appointed by the Pope to the see of Canterbury in 1206.

<sup>4</sup> **The new legate**, Bishop Nicolaus of Tusculum, appointed by the Pope in 1218 to receive John's homage. John did homage to him as the Pope's representative.

<sup>5</sup> **Poictou'**, an old province of France, the capital of which was Poitiers.  
<sup>6</sup> **Bou'vines**, in Flanders.

<sup>7</sup> **Run'ymede**, opposite Staines, and south-east of Windsor.

## 7.—THE BLACK PRINCE AT CRECY.

1346 A.D.

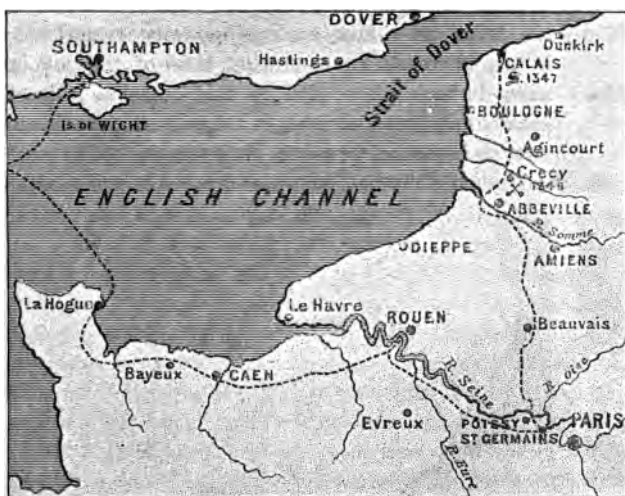
[Edward the Black Prince was the eldest son of Edward III., who succeeded his father, Edward II., in 1327. In 1339 Edward claimed the crown of France, in right of his mother Isabella, and in opposition to Philip VI. Philip III. of France had had two sons. Isabella was the daughter of the elder of these; while Philip VI. was the son of the younger. This was the ground of Edward's claim. But the claim was unwarrantable for two reasons: first, because at the time of her marriage Isabella had abandoned her claim to the French crown; secondly, because a descendant of Isabella's eldest brother was still living, and of course had a better right to the crown than either Edward III. or Philip VI. After the war had languished for six years, Edward, in 1346, prepared for a decisive blow. He set sail from Southampton with a large army, intending to invade France on the south-west; but a storm drove him to the coast of Normandy, and he landed at La Hogue and then marched on Paris.]

1. The two great events of Edward the Black Prince's life, and those which made him famous in war, were the two great battles of Crecy<sup>1</sup> and Poitiers.<sup>2</sup> The war, of which these two battles formed the turning-points, was undertaken by Edward III. to gain the crown of France, —a claim, through his mother, which he had solemnly relinquished, but which he now resumed.

2. I shall not undertake to describe the whole fight of Crecy, but will call your attention briefly to the questions which every one ought to ask himself, if he wishes to understand anything about any battle whatever. First,

Where was it fought? Secondly, Why was it fought? Thirdly, How was it won? And fourthly, What was the result of it? And to this I must add, in the present instance, What part was taken in it by the Prince, now following his father as a young knight, in his first great campaign?

3. The first of these questions involves the second also. If we make out where a battle was fought, this usually



tells us why it was fought. And this is one of the many proofs of the use of learning geography together with history. Each helps us to understand the other. Edward had ravaged Normandy, and reached the very gates of Paris, and was retreating towards Flanders, when he was overtaken by the French King, Philip, who, with an immense army, had determined to cut him off entirely, and so put an end to the war.

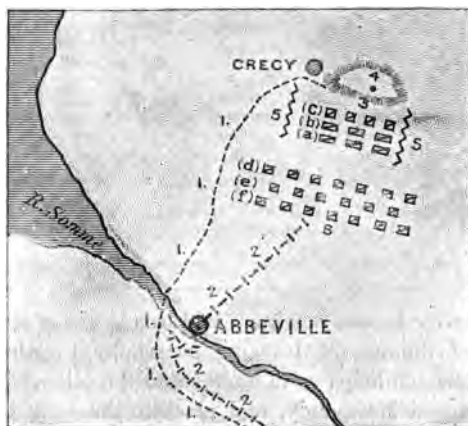
4. With difficulty, and by the happy accident of a low



tide, he crossed the mouth of the Somme, and found himself within his own 'maternal inheritance; and for that special reason he encamped near the forest of Crecy, fifteen miles north-east of Abbeville. "I am," he said, "on the right heritage of madam, my mother, which was given her in dowry; I will defend it against my adversary, Philip of Valois."

5. It was on Saturday, the 28th of August 1346, and it was at four in the afternoon, that the battle commenced. It always helps us better to imagine any remarkable event, when we know at what time of the day or night it took place; and on this occasion it is of great importance, because it helps us at once to answer the question we asked, How was the battle won?

6. The French army had advanced from Abbeville, after



1. Edward's line of march.
2. Philip's line of march.
3. The English army.

4. The windmill.
5. The trenches.
6. The French army.

a hard day's march to overtake the retiring enemy. All along the road, and flooding the hedgeless plains which

bordered the road, the army, swelled by the surrounding peasantry, rolled along, crying, "Kill! kill!" drawing their swords, and thinking they were sure of their prey. What the French King chiefly relied on (besides his great numbers) was the troop of fifteen thousand crossbowmen from Genoa. These were made to stand in front; when, just as the engagement was about to take place, one of those extraordinary incidents occurred which often turn the fate of battles, as they do of human life in general.

7. A tremendous storm gathered from the west, and broke in thunder, and rain, and hail on the field of battle; the sky was darkened, and the horror was increased by the hoarse cries of crows and ravens, which fluttered before the storm, and struck terror into the hearts of the Italian bowmen, who were unaccustomed to these northern tempests. And when at last the sky had cleared, and they prepared their crossbows to shoot, the strings had been so wet by the rain that the men could not draw them.

8. By this time, the evening sun streamed out in full splendour over the black clouds of the western sky—right in their faces; and at the same moment the English archers, who had kept their bows in cases during the storm, and so had their strings dry, let fly their arrows so fast and thick that those who were present could only compare it to snow or sleet. Through and through the heads, and necks, and hands of the Genoese bowmen the arrows pierced. Unable to stand it they turned and fled, and from that moment the panic and confusion were so great that the day was lost.

9. But though the storm, and the sun, and the archers had their part, we must not forget the Prince. He was, we must remember, only sixteen, and yet he commanded the whole English army! It is said that the reason of this was, that the King of France had been so bent on destroying the English forces, that he had hoisted the sacred

banner of France—the great scarlet flag, ‘embroidered with golden lilies, called the Oriflamme<sup>3</sup>—as a sign that no quarter would be given; and that when King Edward saw this, and saw the hazard to which he should expose, not only the army, but the whole kingdom, if he were to fall in battle, he determined to leave it to his son.

10. On the top of a windmill, of which the solid tower is still to be seen on the ridge overhanging the field, the King, for whatever reason, remained bareheaded, whilst the young Prince, who had been knighted a month before, went forward with his companions in arms into the very thickest of the fray; and when his father saw that the victory was ‘virtually gained, he ‘forbore to interfere. “Let the child *win his spurs*,” he said, in words which have since become a proverb, “*and let the day be his*.” The Prince was in very great danger at one moment: he was wounded and thrown to the ground, and was only saved by Richard de Beaumont, who carried the great banner of Wales, throwing the banner over the boy as he lay on the ground, and standing upon it till he had driven back the ‘assailants.

11. The assailants were driven back; and far through the long summer evening, and deep into the summer night, the battle raged. It was not till all was dark that the Prince and his companions halted from their pursuit; and then huge fires and torches were lit up, that the King might see where they were.

12. And then took place that touching ‘interview between the father and the son; the King embracing the boy in front of the whole army, by the red light of the blazing fires, and saying, “*Sweet son, God give you good perseverance: you are my true son; right royally have you acquitted yourself this day, and worthy are you of a crown.*” And the young Prince, after the ‘reverential manner of those times, “bowed to the ground, and gave all the honour to

the King his father." The next day the King walked over the field of 'carnage with the Prince, and said, "*What think you of a battle? is it an agreeable game?*"

13. The general result of the battle was the deliverance of the English army from a most 'imminent danger, and subsequently the conquest of Calais,<sup>4</sup> which the King immediately besieged and won, and which 1347 remained in the possession of the English from that A.D. day to the reign of Queen Mary. From that time the Prince became the darling of the English, and the terror of the French; and whether from this terror, or from the black armour which he wore on that day, and which contrasted with the fairness of his complexion, he was called by them "*Le Prince Noir*"—"The Black Prince," and from them the name has passed to us; so that all his other sounding titles, by which the old poems call him—"Prince of Wales, Duke of Aquitaine"—are lost in the one memorable name which he won for himself in his first fight, at Crecy.

A. P. STANLEY: *Historical Memorials of Canterbury.*

**ad-ver-sa-ry**, enemy.  
**as-sail'-ants**, enemies; persons attacking.  
**cam-paign'**, season of fighting.  
**car-nage**, slaughter.  
**em-broid-ered**, bordered; ornamented.  
**ex-traor-di-na-ry**, unusual.  
**for-bore'**, declined; refrained.  
**im-mi-nent**, near; threatening.

**in-her'i-tance**, possession.  
**in-ter-view**, meeting.  
**ma-ter-nal**, from a mother.  
**pan-ic**, sudden fright.  
**rav-aged**, wasted; plundered.  
**re-lin-quished**, given up.  
**rev-er-en-tial**, respectful.  
**splen-dour**, great brightness.  
**tre-men-dous**, very great.  
**vir-tu-al-ly**, practically.

<sup>1</sup> **Cre'cy**, a town in France, 10 miles north of Abbeville, which is near the mouth of the Somme. It is 55 miles due south of Calais.

<sup>2</sup> **Poitiers'**, a town in the west of France, 58 miles south-west of Tours, and on the railway from Tours to Bordeaux. It was capital of the old province of Poitou.

<sup>3</sup> **Or'iflamme**, from Latin *auri-amma*, golden banner; the ancient

royal standard of France. It was a flag of red silk, embroidered with golden lilies, split into three strips or points, and borne on a gilded lance.

<sup>4</sup> **Cal'ais**, on the north-west coast of France. It was retaken by the Duke of Guise, January 4, 1558. The loss so affected Queen Mary, that it is said to have hastened her death. "When I am dead," she said, "*Calais* will be found written on my heart."

## 8.—WAT TYLER'S RISING.

[Edward the Black Prince died in 1376, a year before his father. Consequently his son became Prince of Wales and heir to the crown. When Edward III. died in 1377, this young prince, his grandson, succeeded him, with the title of Richard II.]

1. The common people<sup>1</sup> of England had long been suffering under great oppression. They were still the mere slaves of the lords of the land on which they lived, and were on most occasions harshly and unjustly treated. But they had begun by this time to think very seriously of not bearing quite so much; and, probably, were emboldened by the French insurrection<sup>2</sup> which had occurred a short time before.

2. The people of Essex rose against the poll-tax, and being severely handled by the government officers, killed some of them. At this very time one of the collectors, going his rounds from house to house at Dartford in Kent, came to the cottage of one Wat, a tiler by trade, and claimed the tax upon his daughter. A quarrel ensued, in the course of which Wat the Tiler struck the collector dead at a blow.

3. Instantly the people of that town uprose as one man. They made Wat Tyler their leader; they joined with the people of Essex, who were in arms under a priest  
**1381** called Jack Straw; they took out of Maidstone<sup>3</sup>  
A.D. prison another priest named John Ball; and gathering in numbers as they went along, advanced, in a great confused army of poor men, to Blackheath.<sup>4</sup> It is said that they wanted to abolish all property, and to declare all men equal. I do not think this very likely; because they stopped the travellers on the roads, and made them swear to be true to King Richard and the people.

4. Nor were they at all disposed to injure those who had done them no harm, merely because they were of high

station ; for the king's mother, who had to pass through their camp at Blackheath, on her way to her young son, lying for safety in the Tower of London, had merely to kiss a few dirty-faced, rough-bearded men, who were noisily fond of royalty, and so got away in perfect safety. Next day the whole mass marched on to London Bridge. There was a drawbridge in the middle, which William Walworth, the mayor, caused to be raised to prevent their coming into the city ; but they soon terrified the citizens into lowering it again, and spread themselves, with great uproar, over the streets.

5. They broke open the prisons ; they burned the papers in Lambeth Palace ;<sup>5</sup> they destroyed the Duke of Lancaster's palace, the Savoy,<sup>6</sup> in the Strand,<sup>7</sup> said to be the most beautiful and splendid in England ; they set fire to the books and documents in the Temple ; and made a great riot. Many of these outrages were committed in drunkenness ; since those citizens who had well-filled cellars were only too glad to throw them open to save the rest of their property ; but even the drunken rioters were very careful to steal nothing. They were so angry with one man, who was seen to take a silver cup at the Savoy Palace, and put it in his breast, that they drowned him in the river, cup and all.

6. The young king had been taken out to treat with them before they committed these excesses ; but he and the people about him were so frightened by the riotous shouts, that they got back to the Tower in the best way they could. This made the insurgents bolder ; so they went on rioting away, striking off the heads of those who did not, at a moment's notice, declare for King Richard and the people ; and killing as many of the unpopular persons whom they supposed to be their enemies as they could by any means lay hold of. In this manner they passed one very violent day, and then proclamation was

made that the king would meet them at Mile End,<sup>8</sup> and grant their requests.

7. The rioters went to Mile End, to the number of sixty thousand, and the king met them there; and to the king the rioters peaceably proposed four conditions. First, that neither they nor their children, nor any coming after them, should be made slaves any more. Secondly, that the rent of land should be fixed at a certain price in money, instead of being paid in service. Thirdly, that they should have liberty to buy and sell in all markets and public places, like other free men. Fourthly, that they should be pardoned for past offences. Heaven knows there was nothing very unreasonable in these proposals. The young king 'deceitfully pretended to think so, and kept thirty clerks up all night writing out a charter accordingly.

8. Now, Wat Tyler himself wanted more than this. He wanted the entire abolition of the forest laws. He was not at Mile End with the rest, but, while that meeting was being held, broke into the Tower of London and slew the archbishop and the treasurer, for whose heads the people had cried out loudly the day before. He and his men even thrust their swords into the bed of the Princess of Wales<sup>9</sup> while the princess was in it, to make certain that none of their enemies were 'concealed there.

9. So Wat and his men still continued armed, and rode about the city. Next morning the king, with a small train of sixty gentlemen—among whom was Walworth, the mayor—rode into Smithfield,<sup>10</sup> and saw Wat and his people at a little distance. Says Wat to his men, "There is the king. I will go speak with him, and tell him what we want." Straightway Wat rode up to him, and began to talk.

10. "King," says Wat, "dost thou see all my men there?"—"Ah," says the king. "Why?"—"Because," says Wat, "they are all at my command, and have sworn

to do whatever I bid them." Some declared afterward that as Wat said this he laid his hand on the king's bridle. Others declared that he was seen to play with his own dagger. I think, myself, that he just spoke to the king like a rough, angry man as he was, and did nothing more. At any rate, he was expecting no attack, and preparing for no resistance, when Walworth, the mayor, did the not very valiant deed of drawing a short sword and stabbing him in the throat. He dropped from his horse, and one of the king's people speedily finished him.

11. So fell Wat Tyler. Fawners and flatterers made a mighty triumph of it, and set up a cry which will occasionally find an echo to this day. But Wat was a hard-working man, who had suffered much, and had been foully outraged; and it is probable that he was a man of a much higher nature and of a much braver spirit than any of the parasites who exulted then, or have exulted since, over his defeat.

12. Seeing Wat down, his men immediately bent their bows to avenge his fall. If the young king had not had presence of mind at that dangerous moment, both he, and the mayor to boot, might have followed Tyler pretty fast. But the king, riding up to the crowd, cried out that Tyler was a traitor, and that he would be their leader. They were so taken by surprise that they set up a great shouting, and followed the boy until he was met at Islington<sup>11</sup> by a large body of soldiers.

13. The end of this rising was the then usual end. As soon as the king found himself safe, he unsaid all he had said, and undid all he had done. Some fifteen hundred of the rioters were tried (mostly in Essex) with great rigour, and executed with great cruelty. Many of them were hanged on gibbets, and left there as a terror to the country people; and because their miserable friends took some of the bodies down to bury, the king ordered the rest to be



chained up—which was the beginning of the barbarous custom of hanging in chains.

CHARLES DICKENS: *A Child's History of England.*

a-bol-ish, do away with.  
con-cealed', hidden.  
de-cit-ful-ly, craftily; by fraud.  
dis-posed', inclined.  
doc-u-ments, papers; deeds.  
em-bold-ened, made bold; en-  
ex-ult-ed, rejoiced. [courage].  
in-sur-gents, rebels.  
mis-er-a-ble, wretched.

op-pres-sion, hardship; burden-bear-  
ing.  
par-a-sites, hangers-on; flatterers.  
proc-la-ma-tion, intimation; public  
notice.  
re-sist-ance, opposition.  
rig-our, harshness; severity.  
ter-ri-fied, frightened.  
val-lant, brave; courageous.

<sup>1</sup> The common people. — They were subjected to vexatious restrictions by laws called "Statutes of Labourers," passed in 1351 and 1353. The plague of 1348 had made labourers very scarce; and these laws were passed in order to compel the surviving workmen to work for whosoever required them at the price in use before the plague. By the second law, no one was allowed to quit his own parish in search of higher wages.

<sup>2</sup> The French insurrection. — That of the Jacquerie, or French peasantry (so called from the nickname of Jacques Bonhomme, applied to the French peasant, as John Bull is to the English). It occurred in May 1358. It was a rising of the enslaved peasantry against the nobles, from whose tyranny they had suffered. Hundreds of castles were attacked, and their inmates, young and old, were barbarously murdered. In the siege of Meaux, the peasants were repulsed, and the rebellion was quickly suppressed.

<sup>3</sup> Maid'stone, the county town of Kent; 32 miles south-east of London.

<sup>4</sup> Blackheath', an open common near London; 5 miles south-east of St. Paul's.

<sup>5</sup> Lam'beth Palace, in London, on the south or Surrey side of the Thames. It is the official residence of the Archbishop of Canterbury.

<sup>6</sup> The Sav'oy, built by Peter of Savoy (in North Italy), uncle of Queen Eleanor, wife of Henry III., in 1245. King John of France resided there when a prisoner in 1357.

<sup>7</sup> The Strand, one of the principal thoroughfares of London, extending from Charing Cross to Temple Bar: so called from being originally the shore of the Thames.

<sup>8</sup> Mile End, now in the borough of Tower Hamlets, in the north-east of London.

<sup>9</sup> Princess of Wales, the King's mother, and widow of the Black Prince.

<sup>10</sup> Smithfield, now in the heart of London; then outside the city walls, and a favourite walk of the citizens. It was the site of a cattle-market as early as 1150. A wide space was devoted to that purpose till 1855, when the new market in Copenhagenfields was opened. There are now large dead-meat and poultry markets in Smithfield.

<sup>11</sup> Isl'ington, a part of London, north of St. Paul's.

## 9.—THE BEGINNINGS OF ENGLISH COMMERCE.

1. England, although destined to play a great part in the history of commerce, was late in entering the field. Partly from her 'insular position, which kept her long apart

from the rest of the world, and partly from the 'incessant domestic broils in which she was engaged, England was slow to 'appreciate the natural resources with which she was so richly endowed, and to learn the manufactures of which she supplied the raw materials to others. Down to the end of the Middle Ages, if she could be reckoned at all among the mercantile nations of Europe, it was only in a very 'subordinate and 'inconspicuous place.

2. Tin, lying near the surface of the earth, and being readily reducible from the ore to the metal by charcoal and a moderate heat, early attracted the notice of the natives, and was the first product for which England was known to other countries. The ore of tin was well known to the Phœnicians,<sup>1</sup> and other nations of 'antiquity. Mixed with copper it formed the favourite metallic substance of the ancients, which, although often called brass, was in reality bronze. Whence the Phœnicians derived their supplies of tin is still a matter of 'controversy. Some of it came from Spain; but there can be no doubt that some also came from Cornwall.

3. According to Strabo, there was a group of islands, called the Cassiterides,<sup>2</sup> in the main ocean, north from the people of Galicia, in which were mines of tin and lead. Only one of these islands was uninhabited. The people occupying the others wore black cloaks, which were girt about the waist and reached to their ankles. They walked about with staffs in their hands, and their beards were as long as those of the goats which they tended. These people led a pastoral and wandering life, and exchanged their minerals for earthenware, salt, and articles of bronze which foreign merchants brought to them.

4. These islands, Strabo adds, were at first exclusively in the hands of the Phœnicians of Gades,<sup>3</sup> who carefully concealed the secret from the rest of the world. It is

more probable, however, that the tin was 'transmitted to the Phœnicians through the Gauls, than that the ships of Tyre actually visited the shores of Britain in search of it. Had the latter been the case, we should no doubt have been furnished with more precise and accurate accounts of the source of the supply. At any rate, it appears to be certain that from an early date considerable quantities of tin and lead were obtained from this country by the Gauls, and conveyed overland to Marseilles, or Massilia, as it was then called.

5. Large herds of wild cattle, and vast numbers of wolves, bears, and other beasts of prey, then roamed through the dense forests of England; and other exports consisted of furs, hides, and horns. The trade in wool dates its 'commencement from a rather later period, but it gradually increased in extent and importance. As the demand for it grew, the shepherds took greater pains in rearing their flocks and in preparing the fleeces, so that in the fifteenth century English wool was esteemed finer than that of Spain or of any other country.

6. These three articles—tin, hides, and wool—constituted the staple of our commerce for many centuries. Traffic in some other things was, however, carried on to a greater or less extent. There can be but little question that at one period there was an active slave trade. Every one will recollect the well-known story of the little knot of fair-haired Angles in the slave-market at Rome which drew from Gregory the exclamation, "*Non Angli, sed angeli*," and led to Augustine's mission<sup>4</sup> to this country. Even after the Conquest the trade seems still to have existed both in the north and south-west of England—Newcastle and Bristol being its chief seats.

7. It sounds oddly now-a-days to hear of the 'celebrity of English pearls. There is a tradition that Cæsar's invasion was prompted by a hope of enriching himself by means

of the pearl fisheries ; and various ancient writers refer to them. Although not usually so pure or large as those of the East, the British pearls were in much request even down to the sixteenth century. To this day they are gathered in the rivers Teith and Dee, in Scotland.

8. The Norman Conquest, by bringing the country into more intimate relations with the Continent, prepared the way for a future extension of English commerce ; but its immediate effect was to depress native industry and enterprise. Down to this period, we may say, speaking generally, that England had no manufactures, that her exports consisted only of raw materials ; and that, although both Saxons and Normans were accustomed to the seas, their ships rarely attempted anything more than a coasting voyage, and left whatever foreign trade England then possessed to be conducted almost exclusively by foreign merchantmen.

9. Until the fourteenth century there was no national commerce, because there had been no nation. The history of the preceding events, as Macaulay says, is the history of wrongs inflicted and sustained by various tribes, which, indeed, all dwelt on English ground, but which regarded each other with aversion such as has scarcely ever existed between communities separated by physical barriers. It was not until the amalgamation of the two great rival races took place that English history really began ; and from that period dates the origin not only of our freedom and our glory, but of our manufactures, commerce, and navigation.

10. The reign of Edward III. is distinguished not merely for brilliant feats of arms, but for the foundation of an important industry. Comparatively little cloth, and that only of the coarsest description, was made in England, until that king, by a grant dated 1331, 1331 invited *weavers*, *dyers*, and *fullers* from Flanders A.D.

to come over and settle in the country, promising them his protection and favour on condition that they should carry on their trades here, and communicate the knowledge of them to his subjects.

11. John Kempe, a weaver of woollen cloth, was, it is said, the first Fleming who accepted this invitation, bringing with him his goods and chattels, servants and apprentices. His example was followed by many of his countrymen in Brabant<sup>5</sup> and Zeeland,<sup>6</sup> who set up their looms in England.

12. For a long period, however, the manufacture made but little progress. There were many obstacles in its way. It was conducted on such a small scale that it could scarcely compete with the extensive works in Flanders, which was then the Lancashire of Europe. Then the English nobles and landed proprietors, being anxious to remain on good terms with the foreign exporters of wool, from whom they derived a large proportion of their revenues, exerted themselves to 'restrict the operations of the weavers at home.

13. During the fourteenth century the navy of England made a great advance in numbers, 'equipment, and  
**1346** 'audacity. When Edward III. besieged Calais in  
A.D. 1346, he was assisted by seven hundred and ten

English merchant vessels, manned by fourteen thousand one hundred and fifty-one sailors. The largest ships on that occasion were furnished by London and Bristol; but Sandwich, Dover, Winchelsea, and Southampton were not far behind in this respect; and Yarmouth, Gosport, Newcastle, and other ports, sent large numbers of smaller craft.

14. The Company of Merchant Adventurers, which received its charter in 1406 from Henry IV., man-  
**1406** aged to hold its ground in spite of violent opposi-  
A.D. tion from the foreigners, and gradually extended

the sphere of its operations. It devoted itself chiefly to the exportation of English woollens of a coarse quality, which were exchanged abroad for wines, rich cloths, and arms, the products of Flanders, Italy, and the Levant.

J. HAMILTON FYFE: *Merchant Enterprise*.

**a-mal-ga-ma'tion**, blending.  
**an-tiq-ui-ty**, ancient times.  
**ap-pre-ci-ate**, see the value of.  
**au-dac-i-ty**, boldness.  
**a-ver-sion**, dislike.  
**ce-leb-ri-ty**, fame.  
**com-mence-ment**, beginning.  
**con'tro-ver-sy**, debate.  
**e-quip-ment**, outfit; apparatus.

**ex-ten'sion**, enlargement.  
**full-ers**, persons who cleanse cloth.  
**in-ces-sant**, unceasing.  
**in-con-spic-u-ous**, not prominent.  
**in-su-lar**, island.  
**pre-céd-ing**, going before; previous.  
**re-strict'**, limit.  
**sub-or-di-nate**, lower.  
**trans-mit-ted**, sent.

<sup>1</sup> **Phœni'cians**, an ancient nation that dwelt on the coast of Syria, north of Canaan. They were the greatest navigators and traders of ancient times. Their chief cities were Tyre and Sidon, which date from the nineteenth or twentieth century B.C. They founded Carthage and many other colonies on the shores of the Mediterranean.

<sup>2</sup> **Cassiter'ides**, the tin islands; from Greek *kassiteros*, tin.

<sup>3</sup> **Ga'des**, the modern Cadiz, on the south-west coast of Spain; founded by the Phœnicians about 1100 B.C.

<sup>4</sup> **Augustine's mission**, for the planting in England of the Romish Church. Augustine, sent to England by Pope Gregory, landed in Kent in 597 A.D.

<sup>5</sup> **Brabant'**, an old duchy of the Netherlands; now divided into North Brabant, belonging to the Netherlands, and Antwerp and South Brabant, belonging to Belgium.

<sup>6</sup> **Zee'land**, a province of the Netherlands, comprising the peninsulas and islands at the mouths of the Scheldt and Maas.

## 10.—THE PILGRIMS OF THE TABARD INN.

[Geoffrey Chaucer, the first great English poet, died in 1400. His most famous work is "The Canterbury Tales," written in 1387; and so called because it consists of stories supposed to be told by pilgrims going to the shrine of Thomas Becket in Canterbury Cathedral. The Tales themselves have no other connection either with Canterbury or with Becket. They are independent stories, being versions some of them of classical legends, and others of Middle Age romances, given in Chaucer's quaint and masculine English. The pilgrims themselves are described in the Prologue, which forms the framework that binds the several tales into a unity. Of this prologue the following chapter is a paraphrase in prose. The pilgrims, it will be seen, are representative of different classes of Englishmen; and the poem is therefore valuable as a picture of the times.]

1. Fly back on the wings of thought five hundred years, and, with our first great poet as a guide, enter the courtyard of the *Tabard Inn* in Southwark,<sup>1</sup> hard by the Bell.

As we pass in, the merry welcome of the big bluff host rings rich and 'mellow on the ear. Every nook of the hostelry, although its chambers and its stables are noted for their size, is filled to overflowing with eight-and-twenty travellers and their eight-and-twenty nags. For April has come, with its sweet and fruitful showers; the tender green of the young corn begins to 'embroider the bare, brown fields; the air rings with the song of birds; and thoughts of 'pilgrimage, undertaken often for piety, but oftener for amusement, begin to stir in the minds of English folk.

2. The 'destination of the pilgrims met in the Tabard is the shrine of murdered Becket at Canterbury; and with early dawn, roused by the active host, they ride upon their way toward Rochester over the pleasant daisied turf of Kent. The host rides with them; for last night at supper they agreed upon a plan of 'beguiling the time by telling tales in turn, and consented to submit themselves to the direction and judgment of the jolly innkeeper, at whose suggestion this agreeable pastime had been chosen.

3. Mark the 'motley group, as the hoofs ring soft upon the moist and chalky soil. First, on a fine charger rides a knight in undress, wearing a frock of fustian, all stained with the rubbing of the armour which he has lately doffed. Gentle and meek as he now looks, the blood of many foes, slain on fifteen deadly battle-fields, in Prussia, Spain, Africa, and the East, has smoked upon his steel.

4. His son, a dainty, curly-headed squire of twenty years, rides with him in a short flowered gown of brilliant colours, made in the tip of the fashion, with long, wide sleeves. The joy of a fresh loving heart pours out in a constant stream of music and song. A fine flute-player, a capital rider, a graceful dancer, a poet, a penman, an artist, this gallant youth presents a 'graphic and enchanting likeness of a *young English gentleman* in the time of Edward III.

Carving at his father's table stands 'prominently out among the many duties of his squirehood.

5. A third figure, that of the yeoman or forester, completes the group of chivalrous portraits 'limned by Geoffrey Chaucer. This brown-faced gamekeeper, with hood and coat of green, under his belt a sheaf of arrows trimly dressed by himself with peacock feathers, a strong bow in his hand, a sword and 'buckler on his left side, and on the other a keen ornamented dagger, a silver jewel shining on his breast, and a horn slung from a green 'baldric, supplies us with a vivid photograph of the manly stuff which won the day for England at Crécy and Poitiers.

6. So much for Chivalry. Now for the Church. No fewer than seven various figures connect themselves more or less nearly with this great power of the Middle Ages. We mark in the 'variegated crowd a prioress, a monk, a mendicant friar or limitour, a summoner, a pardoner, a poor parson, and by-and-by a canon.

7. Giving due 'precedence to the lady, let us sketch the outlines of the prioress, Madame Eglantine. Her long well-shaped nose, her small red mouth, her eyes gray as glass, and her broad white forehead, entitle her to the appellation of a beauty. Her well-made dress—her pretty bracelet of coral, green, and gold, with its motto, "*Amor vincit omnia*"<sup>2</sup>—but especially the delicacy of her 'demeanour at table, where she never lets anything drip upon her breast, and does not dip her fingers *too far* into the sauce—betoken one used to good society, as things went then. Her gentle smile, her sweet singing through the nose, and her knowledge of French, learned at Stratford and very different from the Parisian tongue, afford additional proof that she belongs unmistakably to the high-bred ladies of the land. Like others delicately 'nurtured, her tears spring at the merest trifle. A dead mouse or a *beaten lapdog sets them flowing in a trice.*



8. Equally fine is the Benedictine monk, from whose bridle sweet bells jingle as he rides. His bright rolling eyes, fat red face, and portly form, developed by 'indulgence in roast swan, and kept in good case by riding after his greyhounds, well befit the grandeur of his dress. His sleeves are edged with the rarest fur, a curious gold pin fastens his hood, and pliant boots press the sleek sides of his berry-brown horse.

9. The friar, called limitour because he begs within a certain district, has a wide 'acquaintance among the farmers and innkeepers within his beat, being an especial pet with their wives and daughters, for whom he carries about a tippet full of knives and pins. His merry talk, his easy 'penances, his capital songs make his presence welcome everywhere. Strong, white-necked, with eyes like stars in frost, and a lisp upon his musical tongue, he goes his rounds in a short round cloak of double worsted, enjoying the reputation of being the best beggar in all his house.

10. The summoner, whose business is to cite 'delinquents before an archdeacon's court, is one of the most repulsive portraits in the group. His fiery pimpled face and scabby black brows result from over-doses of wine, and from his coarse feeding on onions, garlic, and such things. When drunk, he can speak only Latin, of which he has got a smattering from the decrees of his court. Between him and the friar a fierce grudge burns, which displays itself in their pungent tales.

11. The pardoner 'typifies that unworthy, artful class, whose doings stirred the honest wrath of John Wycliffe.<sup>3</sup> Straight yellow hair, a thin bleating voice, and eyes starting like a hare's, distinguish this manikin from the burly forms around him. Displaying in his cap a miniature picture of the Saviour, in token of his late visit to Rome, he bears a wallet full of pardons, "from Rome al hote," as *Chaucer slyly says*, a glass-case of pigs' bones, and other

things, which he intends to palm off on simple country folks as holy relics. He will thus often in a day make more money than two months' stipend of the parson. The trick of talking well being a necessary 'appendage to this 'humbug, he is described as a good reader and a fluent preacher.

12. Our love clings especially to the poor parson, who spares no labour or pains in ministering to the spiritual wants of his parishioners. Far asunder as are the dwellings of his flock, no stress of weather, no rain or thunder, can keep him from trudging round, staff in hand, to pay his pastoral visits. Living a simple, godly life, doing his work himself, wasting no time in ambitious runs to London, he can afford, though meek and lowly in the main, to speak boldly and sharply out to those who may prove obstinate in opposition to the truth.

13. Professional and business life has its worthy representatives in the sergeant of law; the doctor of physic; the clerk of Oxford; the merchant; the 'manciple; and last, though assuredly not least, that fair specimen of the English *bourgeoise*,<sup>4</sup> the jolly wife of Bath.

14. There, upon an ambling palfrey sits the stout and comely wife of Bath, who has been to the church door with five husbands. Her round red face is surmounted with a broad-leaved hat like a buckler; her kerchiefs<sup>5</sup> are of fine heavy cloth; her tight scarlet stockings and new shoes with sharp spurs show off her feet and ankles to full advantage. Noted for the making of English cloth, which beats that of Ypres or Ghent,<sup>6</sup> she upholds her civic dignity by taking precedence at mass of all wives in the parish, scarcely one of whom dares go before her to the offering. She has travelled much on pilgrimage, has visited Jerusalem thrice, seeing on the way Rome, Bologna,<sup>7</sup> Compostella,<sup>8</sup> and Cologne;<sup>9</sup> and she is certainly not overburdened with *bashfulness* in her talk. Before beginning her story

she will treat her audience to the full details of her matrimonial experience, making the prologue twice as long as the tale. There is a sly and 'pungent spice of satire here.

15. The franklin, the reeve, and the ploughman give us an idea of those who farmed the soil of merry England long ago. Nowhere have we a finer picture than that of the jolly Vavasour or country gentleman of the time, whose rosy face and beard of daisy whiteness claim at once our 'veneration and our love. The overflowing table that he keeps, where all the delicacies of the season jostle each other in succession, thick as flakes of falling snow, would tempt an 'anchorite to eat.

16. The miller, the skipper, the cook, the haberdasher, the weaver, the dyer, and the tapestrer show us fine specimens of the trading and working classes, who form the bulk of the nation, and in one sense its greatest strength.

17. Nowhere but in the Prologue of Chaucer's "Canterbury Tales" have we pictures like those of the men and women over whom the later Plantagenets reigned. In the four-and-twenty Tales, which were all that the gifted author lived to complete, we get further glimpses or rather views of English life in the Middle Ages, the tone of thought which coloured social intercourse, and especially the kind of stories which then did the work of the modern novel.

18. To be sure, this special set of pilgrims, containing so many varied and strongly-lined characters, never in all probability trotted along the Canterbury road; but in every fresh 'detachment from the Southwark inns specimens of the knights, millers, wives of Bath, and other 'devotees, whose acquaintance we have just made, appeared sprinkling the motley crowds that wended on to the favourite shrine of the murdered St. Thomas. And old Geoffrey, having worn all the gilding off his courtier-life and seen the dark hollow shell below, sat down in his quiet

room at Woodstock,<sup>10</sup> to survey the pilgrim scenes, in which himself had played a part, and to select with an artist's skill those materials of character and costume which best suited the plan he had sketched out for a great national picture of Englishmen, painted in English words.

W. F. COLLIER: *History of England*.

ac-quaint'-ance, intimacy.  
an'-cho-rite, a hermit; a recluse.  
ap-pen'-dage, addition.  
bal'-dric, a belt or girdle.  
be-guil'-ing, whiling away.  
buck'-ler, shield.  
de-lin'-quents, offenders.  
de-mean'-our, conduct.  
des-ti-na'-tion, journey's end.  
de-tach'-ment, group; set.  
dev-o-tees', devoted persons; earnest followers.  
em-broi'-der, deck; adorn.  
graph'-ic, forcible.  
hum'-bug, trickery; deception.

in-dul'-gence in, fondness for.  
limned, drawn.  
man'-ci-ple, steward; provider of  
mel'-low, soft. [food.  
mot'-ley, mixed; of various colours.  
nur-tured, trained; brought up.  
pen'-an-ces, pains endured for sin.  
pil'-grim-age, a journey to a sacred place.  
pre-ce'-dence, priority.  
prom'-i-nent-ly, strikingly.  
pun'-gent, sharp.  
typ-i-fies, represents.  
va'-ri-o-gät-ed, mixed; diversified.  
ven-er-a'-tion, reverence.

<sup>1</sup> South'-wark (*Suth'-ark*), a borough on the south side of the Thames, in Surrey, included in London.

<sup>2</sup> *Amor vincit omnia*,—Love conquers all things.

<sup>3</sup> John Wyc'-liffe, the earliest English Reformer; first translator of the whole Bible into English; born 1324; died at Lutterworth (Leicestershire) 1384.

<sup>4</sup> Bourg'-eoise (*Boorzh'-was*), a burgher; a citizen.

<sup>5</sup> Kerchiefs, coverings for the head; originally *covechief*, from French *couver*, to cover, and *chef*, the head.

<sup>6</sup> Y'-pres or Ghent, towns in Belgium, noted for their manufactures of linen.

<sup>7</sup> Bologn'a (*Bo-lon'-ya*), a town in Italy, 50 miles north of Florence; has a fine cathedral and numerous churches, convents, and monasteries.

<sup>8</sup> Compostel'la, the shrine of St. James of Compostella at Santiago in Galicia, in the north-west of Spain. The body of the Apostle James was said to have been carried to Galicia in a rudderless ship, and to have been deposited at Compostella. Hence the shrine became a great resort of pilgrims.

<sup>9</sup> Cologne', on the Rhine, where the bones of the Wise Men of the East were said to be preserved.

<sup>10</sup> Wood'-stock, 8 miles north-west of Oxford.

## 11.—THE FIELD OF AGINCOURT.

[The great victory of Agincourt—25 miles from Crécy—was gained by Henry V. in 1415. Henry had succeeded his father Henry IV. in 1413. Shortly afterwards, encouraged by the rivalry of the houses of Orleans and Burgundy, he revived the claim of Edward III. to the French crown (see note to "The Black Prince at Crécy," p. 74). He also demanded the provinces assigned to England by the Treaty of Bretigny in 1360, together with the hand of the Princess

Catherine in marriage. When these claims were rejected, Henry declared war. He landed at the mouth of the Seine, took Harfleur, and marched toward Paris. Finding his army reduced by disease, he turned northward, resolved to winter at Calais. The French army endeavoured to intercept his march. They met at Agincourt; and although the English were inferior in numbers, they gained a signal victory. The French lost ten thousand men, most of them men of noble rank. The English loss was only sixteen hundred. Henry made no further use of his victory. He continued his march to Calais, and thence crossed to Dover.]

1. Fair stood the wind for France,  
When we our sails advance,  
Nor now to prove our chance  
Longer will tarry;  
But, putting to the main,  
At Kaux, the mouth of Seine,  
With all his martial train,  
Landed King Harry.
2. And taking many a fort,  
Furnished in warlike sort,  
Marched towards Agincourt  
In happy hour;  
Skirmishing day by day  
With those that stopped his way,  
Where the French general lay  
With all his power;
3. Which, in his height of pride,  
King Henry to deride,  
His ransom to provide  
To the King sending;  
Which he neglects the while,  
As from a nation vile,  
But, with an angry smile,  
Their fall portending.
4. And, turning to his men,  
Quoth our brave Henry then,—  
“Though they to one be ten,  
Be not amazed;  
Yet have we well begun,—  
Battles so bravely won  
Have ever to the sun  
By fame been raised.

5. "And for myself," quoth he,  
"This my full rest shall be;  
England, ne'er mourn for me,  
Nor more 'esteem me:  
Victor I will remain,  
Or on this earth be slain;  
Never shall she 'sustain  
Loss to redeem me.
6. "Poitiers and Creçy tell,  
When most their pride did swell,  
Under our swords they fell;  
No less our skill is,  
Than when our grandsire great,<sup>1</sup>  
Claiming the regal seat,  
By many a warlike feat,  
Lopped the French lilies."
7. The Duke of York so dread,  
The eager 'vaward led;  
With the main Henry sped,  
Amongst his 'henchmen;  
Excester had the rear,  
A braver man not there;  
Marry, how hot they were  
On the false Frenchmen!
8. They now to fight are gone,—  
Armour on armour shone;  
Drum now to drum did groan,  
To hear was wonder  
That with the cries they make,  
The very earth did shake;  
Trumpet to trumpet spake,  
Thunder to thunder.
9. Well it thine age became,  
O noble Erpingham,  
Which did the signal aim  
To our hid forces;

When from a meadow by,<sup>3</sup>  
Like a storm suddenly,  
The English 'archery  
Struck the French horses ;

10. With Spanish yew so strong,  
Arrows a cloth-yard long,  
That like to serpents stung,  
Piercing the wither ;<sup>3</sup>  
None from his fellow starts,  
But, playing many parts,  
And like true English hearts,  
Stuck close together.

11. When down their bows they threw,  
And forth their 'bilbows drew,  
And on the French they flew,  
Not one was tardy ;  
Arms were from shoulders sent,  
Scalps to the teeth were rent,  
Down the French peasants went—  
Our men were hardy.

12. This while our noble king,  
His broadsword 'brandishing,  
Down the French host did 'ding,  
As to o'erwhelm it ;  
And many a deep wound lent,  
His arms with blood 'besprent,  
And many a cruel dent  
Bruis'd his helmet.

13. Glo'ster, that duke so good,  
Next of the royal blood,  
For famous England stood,  
With his brave brother,  
Clarence, in steel so bright,  
Though but a maiden knight,  
Yet in that 'furious fight  
Scarce such another.

14. Warwick in blood did wade,  
Oxford the foe invade,  
And cruel slaughter made,  
Still as they ran up;  
Suffolk his axe did ply,  
Beaumont and Willoughby  
Bare them right 'doughtily,  
Ferrers and Fanhope.
15. Upon Saint Crispin's day<sup>4</sup>  
Fought was this noble fray,  
Which fame did not delay  
To England to carry;—  
Oh, when shall Englishmen  
With such acts fill a pen,  
Or England breed again  
Such a King Harry?

MICHAEL DRAYTON.

a-mazed', surprised.

arch'er-y, body of bowmen.

be-sprent', sprinkled; covered.

bil'-bows, swords.

brand-ish-ing, waving.

ding, strike; knock down.

dought'-ly, bravely.

e-steam', value.

fu'-ri-ous, raging; fierce.

hench-men, squires; followers.

mar'-tial, warlike.

por-tend'-ing, foreshowing.

skir'-mish-ing, fighting in loose order.

sus-tain', suffer.

va-ward, the front line; the van-guard.

<sup>1</sup> Our grandsire great.—Edward III. was the great-grandfather of Henry V., and he, or rather his son, the Black Prince, gained over the French the great victories of Crecy (1346) and Poitiers (1356). But Henry V. was not descended from the Black Prince, but from John of Gaunt, his brother.

<sup>2</sup> From a meadow by.—When the French cavalry had been thrown into confusion, partly by being crowded in a narrow space, and partly by the soft and clayey soil, the English archers,

who had been posted behind palisades in a field out of sight of the enemy, began their attack. A shower of arrows increased the confusion in the ranks of the French horsemen; and then the archers fell on the Frenchmen with their swords, and hewed them to pieces.

<sup>3</sup> With'er, the ridge between the shoulder-bones of a horse; generally *withers*.

<sup>4</sup> St. Crispin's day.—August 25th. Crispin is the patron saint of shoemakers.

## 12.—JOAN OF ARC.

[Henry V. had made himself master of all France north of the Loire before the end of 1421; but in 1422 he died at Paris. His son and successor Henry VI. was an infant nine months old; and the government was intrusted to his uncles



the Dukes of Gloucester and Bedford, the former being Protector in England, and the latter Regent in France. The war in France continued. Bedford, with the assistance of the Earl of Salisbury, ably maintained the honour of England; but the English cause was weakened by the alienation of the Duke of Burgundy, and by the intrigues and quarrels of Gloucester at home. On the death of Charles VI. in 1422, his son the Dauphin had taken the title of Charles VII.; but he had not yet been crowned, his capital and the whole north of France being in the hands of his enemies. This was the position of affairs when, in 1428, the English resolved to cross the Loire and invade the south of France. As a preliminary step, Orleans was besieged by Salisbury; and this siege was in progress when Joan of Arc made her appearance.]

1. The fall of Orleans was confidently anticipated; and the most gloomy apprehensions prevailed in the councils of the French monarch, when the French throne was saved from ruin by Joan d'Arc, the daughter of a small

**1412** farmer at Domrémy, a hamlet in Champagne.<sup>1</sup>

A.D. This interesting female was born about the year 1412. Her education did not differ from that of the other poor girls in the neighbourhood; but she was distinguished above them all by her diligence, modesty, and piety.

2. Young as she was, Joan had heard enough of the calamities which oppressed her country, to bewail the hard fate of her sovereign, driven from the

**1428** throne of his fathers. It chanced that in May A.D. 1428, a marauding party of Burgundians compelled the inhabitants of Domrémy to seek an asylum in Neufchâteau.<sup>2</sup> The village was plundered, and the church reduced to a heap of ruins.

3. On the departure of the Burgundians, the fugitives returned, and the sight wound up the enthusiasm of Joan to the highest pitch. She escaped from her parents, prevailed on an uncle to accompany her, and announced her mission to Baudricourt, one of the French generals, who, though he treated her with ridicule, deemed it his duty to communicate her history to the dauphin, and received an order to forward her to the French court. To travel a *distance of one hundred and fifty leagues, through a wide*

tract of country, of which one portion was possessed by hostile garrisons, and the other perpetually 'infested by parties of plunderers, was a perilous and almost hopeless attempt.

4. But Joan was confident of success; on horseback, and in male attire, with an escort of seven persons, she



passed without meeting an enemy; and on the tenth day, at Fierbois, a few miles from Chinon,<sup>3</sup> announced to Charles her arrival and object. An hour was fixed for her admission to the royal presence; and the poor maiden of Domrémy was ushered into a 'spacious hall, lighted up with fifty torches, and filled with some hundreds of

knights, among whom Charles himself had mixed unnoted, and in plain attire.

5. Joan entered without embarrassment; the glare of the lights, the gaze of the spectators did not disconcert her. Singling out the dauphin at the first glance, she walked up to him with a firm step, bent her knee, and said, "God give you good life, gentle king." He was surprised, but replied, "I am not the king, he is there," pointing at the same time to a different part of the hall. "In the name of God," she exclaimed, "it is not they, but you are the king. Most noble lord dauphin, I am Joan the maid, sent on the part of God to aid you and the kingdom; and by his order I announce to you that you will be crowned in the city of Rheims."<sup>4</sup>

6. The following day she made her appearance in public, and on horseback. From her look she was thought to be in her sixteenth or seventeenth year; her figure was slender and graceful, and her long black locks fell in ringlets on her shoulders. She ran a course with the lance, and managed her horse with ease and dexterity. The crowd burst into shouts of admiration: they saw in her something more than human; she was, they thought, a knight descended from heaven, for the salvation of France. Men of every rank caught the enthusiasm, and thousands offered their services to follow her to battle.

7. Sixty bastiles or forts, erected in a circle round Orleans, had effectually intercepted the communication with the country; and the horrors of famine were  
**1429** already felt within the walls, when it was resolved  
 A D. by the French Cabinet to make a desperate effort to throw a supply of provisions into the city. A strong body of men, under some of the bravest officers in France, assembled at Blois, and Joan solicited and obtained permission not only to join, but also to direct, the *expedition*.

8. To the English commanders she sent orders, in the name of God, to withdraw from France, and return to their native country. Dunois, the governor of Orleans, led her secretly into that city, where she was received by the citizens, with lighted torches and acclamations of joy. Her presence created in the soldiers a spirit of daring, and a confidence of success. Day after day sallies were made, and the strongest of the English forts successively fell into the hands of the assailants.

9. One day, while she was in the act of planting a ladder, an arrow passed through an opening in her corselet, and fixed itself between the chest and the shoulder. Her companions conveyed her out of the crowd, the wound was dressed, and the heroine, after a few minutes spent in prayer, rejoined the combatants. At her appearance the assailants redoubled their efforts, and the fort was soon won.

10. Suffolk, disconcerted by repeated losses, determined to raise the siege; and the soldiers, with feelings of shame and regret, turned their backs to the city. The Earl of Suffolk was soon besieged in a neighbouring town, and the place was carried by storm. More than three hundred of the garrison perished; and Suffolk, with the remainder, fell into the hands of the enemy.

11. Joan had always declared that the object of her mission was twofold: the liberation of Orleans, and the coronation of the king at Rheims. Of these the first had been accomplished; and she vehemently urged the execution of the second. Though to penetrate as far as Rheims was an enterprise of difficulty and danger, for every intermediate fortress was in the possession of the enemy, Charles determined to trust to his own fortune and the prediction of his inspired deliverer.

12. Having sent a strong division of troops to alarm the frontiers of Normandy, and another to insult those of

Guienne, Charles commenced his march with an army of ten thousand cavalry. The citizens of Rheims having expelled the Burgundian garrison, received him with the most flattering testimonies of joy. The coronation was performed in the usual manner ; but as none of the peers of France attended, Charles appointed 'proxies to perform their duties. During the ceremony, Joan, with her banner unfurled, stood by the king's side : as soon as it was over, she threw herself on her knees, embraced his feet, declared her mission accomplished, and with tears solicited his leave to return to her former station.

13. But the king was unwilling to lose the services of one who had hitherto proved so useful ; and at his earnest request she consented to remain with the army, and to strengthen that throne which she had in a great measure established. Bedford obtained fresh 'assurances of fidelity from the Duke of Burgundy, withdrew five thousand men from his Norman garrisons, and received an equal number from his uncle Beaufort. With these he went in pursuit of Charles, who was unwilling to stake his crown on the uncertain event of a battle.

14. In the neighbourhood of Senlis, however, the two armies 'undesignedly came in sight of each other. The English, inferior in numbers, prepared for the fight after their usual manner : the French officers, flushed with success, impatiently demanded the signal for battle. But the defeats of Agincourt<sup>5</sup> and Verneuil<sup>6</sup> led Charles not to rely on mere superiority of number. The armies separated as if it had been by mutual consent. The regent hastened into Normandy ; and Charles, at the 'solicitation of his female companion, took advantage of the duke's absence to make an attempt on the capital. Soissons,<sup>7</sup> Senlis,<sup>8</sup> Beauvais,<sup>9</sup> and St. Denis<sup>10</sup> opened their gates. He advanced to Montmartre,<sup>11</sup> published an amnesty, and directed *an assault on the Faubourg of St. Honoré*.<sup>12</sup>

15. The action lasted four hours. At its very commencement Joan received a dangerous wound, was thrown into the ditch, and lay there unnoticed till she was discovered in the evening, and carried off by a party sent in search after her. Charles, mortified by the obstinate resistance of the Parisians, retired to Bourges;<sup>13</sup> while the maid, looking on her wound as an admonition from Heaven that her commission had ceased with the coronation at Rheims, consecrated her armour to God in the church at St. Denis. Her services, however, were still wanted. At the solicitation of her sovereign, she consented to resume the profession of arms, and accepted a patent of nobility for herself and her family, accompanied with a grant of income equal to that of an earl.

16. At the commencement of spring, the Duke of Burgundy undertook to reduce the city of Compiègne;<sup>14</sup> and the maid was selected to raise the 1430 A.D. siege. Her troops were defeated, however; she was taken prisoner, and was handed over to the regent Bedford. The unfortunate maid was treated with neglect by her friends, with cruelty by her enemies. If ever prince had been indebted to a subject, Charles VII. was indebted to Joan of Arc; yet from the moment of her captivity she appears to have been forgotten. We read not of any sum offered for her ransom, or of any attempt made to alleviate the rigour of her confinement, or of any notice taken of her trial and execution.

17. The Bishop of Beauvais, in whose diocese she had been taken, claimed the right of trying her in his court on an accusation of sorcery and imposture. It is generally supposed that this claim was made at the suggestion of the Duke of Bedford. The inquiry was opened at Rouen;<sup>15</sup> on sixteen different days she was brought to the bar; the questions, with her answers, were laid before the University of Paris; and the opinion of that body concurred with

the judgment of the court. Still the sentence was delayed from day to day; and repeated attempts were made to save her from the punishment of death, by inducing her to make a frank and explicit confession.

18. But the spirit of the heroine continued undaunted. She proudly maintained that she had been the inspired minister of the Almighty. The fatal day arrived, and the captive was placed at the bar; but when the judge had prepared to pronounce sentence, she yielded to a sudden impulse of terror, subscribed an act of 'abjuration, and, having promised upon oath never more to wear male attire, was remanded to her former place of confinement.

19. Her enthusiasm, however, revived in the solitude of a prison, and her judges condemned her, on the charge of having relapsed into her former errors. She was led sobbing and struggling to the stake; but the expectation of a heavenly deliverer did not forsake her though she saw the fire kindled at her feet.

1431 A.D. She then burst into loud exclamations, protesting her innocence, and invoking the aid of the Almighty; and just before the flames enveloped her, was seen embracing a crucifix, and calling on Christ for mercy. This cruel and unjustifiable tragedy was acted in the market-place of Rouen, before an immense concourse of spectators, about twelve months after her capture.

JOHN LINGARD: *History of England.*

ab-ju-ra'tion, disavowing; withdrawing on oath.	em-bar-rass-ment, confusion.
ac-cla-ma'tions, shouts.	fron'tiers, borders; confines.
al-le-vi-ate, lighten.	fu-gi-tives, persons who had fled.
an-ti-c'i-pat-ed, looked for; expected.	in-fest-ed, disturbed; harassed.
as-sur-an-ces, pledges.	in-ter-cept-ed, cut off; stopped.
ca-lam-i-ties, distresses; misfortunes.	ma-raud-ing, plundering.
com-bat-ants, fighters.	prox-ies, substitutes.
con-se-crát-ed, set apart with devotion.	rid'i-cule, mockery.
dex-ter-i-ty, cleverness; skill.	so-líc-i-ta-tion, request.
dis-con-cert-ed, disturbed; frustrated.	so-líc-it-ed, begged.
dis-tin-guished, noted; eminent.	spa-cious, large; roomy.
	un-de-sign-ed-ly, by accident; without design.
	ve-he-ment-ly, strongly; earnestly.

<sup>1</sup> *Champagne* (*Sham-pan*), an old province of France, of which the capital was Troyes, 90 miles south-west of Paris. Domrémy is on the river Meuse, and on the borders of the departments Meuse and Vosges. It is now called Domrémy-la-Pucelle in honour of the Maid (la Pucelle).

<sup>2</sup> *Neufchâteau*, in the department Vosges, 7 miles south of Domrémy.

<sup>3</sup> *Chinon*, on the river Vienne, 25 miles south-west of Tours.

<sup>4</sup> *Rheims*, in the department Marne, 90 miles north-east of Paris. There nearly all the kings of France were consecrated, till the Revolution of 1830.

<sup>5</sup> *Agincourt*, where Henry V. of England defeated the French in 1415.

<sup>6</sup> *Verneuil*, where the Duke of Bedford (aided by the Burgundians) defeated the French and the Scots in 1424. It is 60 miles west of Paris.

<sup>7</sup> *Soissons*, in department Aisne, 60 miles north-east of Paris.

<sup>8</sup> *Senlis*, in department Oise, 25 miles north-east of Paris.

<sup>9</sup> *Beauvais*, in department Oise, 41 miles north-west of Paris.

<sup>10</sup> *St. Denis*, in department Seine, 5½ miles north of the centre of Paris, of which it is now a suburb.

<sup>11</sup> *Montmartre*, a suburb in the north of Paris.

<sup>12</sup> *Fauxbourg of St. Honoré*, one of the principal streets in Paris.

<sup>13</sup> *Bourges*, in department Cher, 123 miles south of Paris.

<sup>14</sup> *Compiègne*, in department Oise, 41 miles north-east of Paris.

<sup>15</sup> *Rouen*, on the river Seine, 70 miles north-west of Paris. It was capital of the old province of Normandy; and there William the Conqueror died in 1087.

### 13.—WILLIAM CAXTON.

[William Caxton, the first English printer, was born in Kent about 1410, and was apprenticed to a London mercer in 1425. The date of his going abroad is uncertain; it was probably about 1460. His first work, the "Recuyell of the Historyes of Troye," was printed in 1471. In that year he returned to England, and he died in 1492.]

1. During the last thirty or forty years of the fifteenth century, while printing was becoming gradually more and more practised on the Continent, and the presses of Mentz,<sup>1</sup> Bamberg,<sup>2</sup> Cologne,<sup>3</sup> Strasburg,<sup>4</sup> Augsburg,<sup>5</sup> Rome, Venice, and Milan, were sending forth numbers of Bibles, and various learned and 'theological works, chiefly in Latin, an English merchant, a man of substance and of no little note in Chepe,<sup>6</sup> appeared at the court of the Duke of Burgundy at Bruges,<sup>7</sup> to 'negotiate a commercial treaty between that sovereign and the King of England. This mission accomplished, the worthy 'ambassador seems to have liked the place and the people so well, and to have been so much liked in return, that for some years afterwards he took up




his residence there, holding some honourable, easy appointment, in the household of the Duchess of Burgundy. This was William Caxton, who here ripened, if he did not acquire, his love of literature and scholarship, and began, from hatred of idleness, to take pen in hand himself.

2. "When I remember," says he, in his preface to his first work, a translation of a fanciful "*Recueil des Histoires de Troye*,"<sup>8</sup> "that every man is bounden by the commandment and counsel of the wise man to eschew sloth and idleness, which is mother and nourisher of vices, and ought to put himself into virtuous occupation and business, then I, having no great charge or occupation, following the said counsel, took a French book, and read therein many strange; marvellous histories.

3. "And for so much as this book was new and late made, and drawn into French, and never seen in our English tongue, I thought in myself, it should be a good business to translate it into our English, to the end that it might be had as well in the royaume of England as in other lands, and also to pass therewith the time; and thus concluded in myself to begin this said work, and forthwith took pen and ink, and began boldly to run forth, as blind Bayard, in this present work."

4. While at work upon this translation, Caxton found leisure to visit several of the German towns where printing presses were established, and to get an insight into the mysteries of the art, so that by the time he had finished the volume he was able to print it.

5. At the close of the third book of the "*Recuyell*," he says: "Thus end I this book, which I have translated after mine author, as nigh as God hath given me cunning, to whom be given the laud and praise. And for as much as in the writing of the same my pen is worn, mine hand weary and not steadfast, mine eyen<sup>9</sup> dimmed with overmuch looking on the white paper, and my courage not so



prone and ready to labour as it hath been, and that age creepeth on me daily, and feebleth all the body; and also because I have promised to 'divers gentlemen, and to my friends, to address to them as hastily as I might this said book; therefore I have practised and learned, at my great charge and 'dispende, to ordain this said book in print, after the manner and form you may here see; and is not written with pen and ink as other books are, to the end that every man may have them at once. For all the books of this story, named the 'Recuyell of the Historyes of Troye,' thus imprinted as ye here see, were begun in one day, and also finished in one day" (that is, in the same space of time).

6. By the year 1477, Caxton had returned to London and set up a printing establishment within the precincts of Westminster Abbey;<sup>10</sup> had given to the world the first three books ever printed in England,—“The Game and Play of the Chesse” (March 1474); “A booke of the hoole Lyf of Jason” (1475); and “The Dictes<sup>11</sup> and Notable Wyse Sayenges of the Phylosophers” (1477),—and was fairly started in the great work of supplying printed books to his countrymen; which, as a placard in his largest type sets forth, if any one wanted “emprynted after the forme of this present lettre whiche ben well and truly correct, late hym come to Westmonster, in to the Almonesrye, at the reed pale, and he shal have them good chepe.” From the situation of the first printing office, the term chapel is applied to such establishments to this day.

7. Caxton published between sixty and seventy different works during the seventeen years of his career as a printer, all of them in what is called black letter, and the bulk of them in English. He had always a view to the improvement of the people in the works he published; and though many of his productions may seem to us to be of an unprofitable kind, it is clear that in the issue of 'chivalrous nar-

ratives, and of Chaucer's poems (to whom, says the old printer, "ought to be given great laud and praising for his noble making<sup>12</sup> and writing"), he was aiming at the diffusion of a nobler spirit and a higher taste than then prevailed.

8. In 1490, Caxton, an old, worn man, 'verging on four-score years of age, wrote, "Every man ought to intend in such wise to live in this world, by keeping the commandments of God, that he may come to a good end; and then, out of this world full of wretchedness and 'tribulation, he may go to heaven, unto God and his saints, unto joy 'perdurable;" and passed away, still labouring at his post. He died while writing "The most virtuous history of the devout and right renowned Lives of Holy Fathers living in the desert, worthy of remembrance to all well-disposed persons."

9. Wynkyne de Worde filled his master's place in the almonry of Westminster; and the guild of printers gradually waxed strong in numbers and in influence. In Germany they were privileged to wear robes trimmed with gold and silver, such as the nobles themselves appeared in; and to display on their 'escutcheon an eagle with wings outstretched over the globe—a symbol of the flight of thought and words throughout the world. In our own country, the printers were men of 'erudition and literary acquirements; and were honoured as became their mission.

J. HAMILTON FYFE: *Triumphs of Invention and Discovery.*

ac-quire', obtain.

am-bas-sa-dor, special envoy.

chiv-al-rous, relating to knight-hood  
and war; heroic.

con-clud-ed, resolved.

coun-sel, advice.

cun-ning, knowledge; skill.

dis-pense', outlay; expense.

di-vers, several.

er-u-di-tion, learning.

es-chow', shun; avoid.

e-scut'-cheon, shield bearing a coat of  
lef-sure, spare time. [arma.

mys-ter-les, secrets; hidden things.

ne-go-ti-ate, arrange.

per-dür-a-ble, during through and  
through; everlasting.

rip-ened, made ripe; perfected.

roy'-aume, realm; kingdom.

the-o-log-i-cal, relating to religion.

trib-u-la-tion, distress; suffering.

verg-ing on, going near to.

<sup>1</sup> **Mentz**, also **Mainz** (German), and **Mayence** (French), a town of Rhenish Prussia, on the Rhine, opposite the confluence of the Main. Here Gutenberg, the inventor of printing with movable types, was born about 1400, and printed his first book, 1450-55.

<sup>2</sup> **Bam'berg**, in Bavaria, on the Main, 100 miles above and east of Frankfurt.

<sup>3</sup> **Cologne**, or **Köln** (German), in Rhenish Prussia, on the Rhine, 100 miles below Mentz.

<sup>4</sup> **Stras'burg**, in Elsass, or Alsace (French), on the Rhine. Here Gutenberg made his first experiments in type-cutting.

<sup>5</sup> **Augs'burg**, in Bavaria, 85 miles north-west of Munich.

<sup>6</sup> **Chepe**, or Chespide, a street in London. The name means the place

for dealing, selling and buying: a *chapman* is a dealer.

<sup>7</sup> **Bruges**, an ancient city of Belgium, 55 miles north-west of Brussels. It is capital of West Flanders.

<sup>8</sup> "**Recueil des Histoires de Troye**;" that is, Summary of the Histories of Troy.

<sup>9</sup> **Eyen**, old plural for eyes: still retained in Scots *een*.

<sup>10</sup> The precincts of Westminster Abbey.—The Almonry was the particular part of the building occupied by Caxton.

<sup>11</sup> "**Dictes**;" that is, sayings or words: Latin, *dicta*, things said.

<sup>12</sup> **Making**, writing poetry. In Old English, and in Scots, a poet was called a *maker*. The word *poet* is from a Greek word, *poieō*, I make; that is, I invent, or create.

## 14.—THE END OF THE WARS OF THE ROSES.

[The Wars of the Roses began in 1455, when the House of York claimed the throne. In 1461 Henry VI. of the House of Lancaster was dethroned, and the Duke of York was made king, with the title of Edward IV. Edward IV. died in 1483. As his son, Edward V., was only twelve years of age, Richard, Duke of Gloucester, the young king's uncle, assumed the regency. Ere long he had himself chosen Protector of the realm. His next step was to declare the late king's marriage to have been irregular, and his children to be therefore illegitimate. The young king and his brother, the Duke of York, were thrown into the Tower, and Richard was proclaimed king (June 26). Soon after this, the two princes in the Tower disappeared. Nothing certain is known as to their fate. The common story is that they were smothered, by order of their uncle. Lancastrian plots against Richard soon began to take shape. These were encouraged by the Duke of Buckingham, who had previously been Richard's chief supporter. The new claimant of the throne was Henry Tudor, Earl of Richmond, whose mother was a lineal descendant of John of Gaunt. For safety, Richmond took shelter in France, and began to raise forces for the purpose of invading England. He sailed from Harfleur, August 1, 1485.]

1. Henry landed at Milford Haven, at the farthest extremity of South Wales, where, perhaps, Richard had least expected him; and so small was the force by which he was accompanied that the news did not at first give the king very much anxiety. He professed great satisfaction that his adversary was now

Aug. 7,  
1485  
A.D.



thousand men, which is supposed to have been less than half that of the king. That day, when Stanley had come to the earl secretly at London to assure him of his support in the coming battle, and his brother Sir William were each at the battle not far off, and were only temporizing to support their son Lord Strange. This information reached the king's mind of much anxiety, for at various times he had felt serious misgivings about the success of his enterprise. The issue was now to be decided on the following day.

In the morning both parties prepared for the battle. Richard rose before daybreak, much agitated, it was said, by dreadful dreams<sup>3</sup> that had haunted him in the night-time. But he entered the battle on Aug. 22, 1485, wearing his crown upon his head, and leading his troops with an eloquent harangue. A.D.

However, treason in his camp, and many of his men were only seeking an opportunity to desert and join the enemy. A warning, indeed, had been given by an unknown hand to his foremost supporter, the Duke of Norfolk, in the following rhyme,

coming to bring matters to the test of battle. The earl, however, was among friends from the moment he landed. Pembroke was his native town, and the inhabitants expressed their willingness to serve his uncle, the Earl of Pembroke, as their natural and immediate lord. The very men whom Richard had placed to keep the country against him at once joined his party, and he passed on to Shrewsbury with little or no opposition.

2. The king's "unsteadfast friendships," on the other hand, were now rapidly working his ruin. His own attorney-general, Morgan Kidwelly, had been in communication with the enemy before he landed. Richard, however, was very naturally suspicious of Lord Stanley, his rival's stepfather, who, though he was steward of the royal household, had asked leave shortly before the invasion to go home and visit his family in Lancashire. This the king granted only on condition that he would send his son, George Lord Strange, to him at Nottingham in his place. Lord Strange was accordingly sent to the king; but when the news arrived of Henry's landing, Richard desired the presence of his father also. Stanley pretended illness—an excuse which could not fail to increase the king's suspicions.

3. His son at the same time made an attempt to escape, and being captured confessed that he himself and his uncle Sir William Stanley had formed a 'project with others to go over to the enemy; but he protested his father's innocence, and assured the king that he would obey his summons. He was made to understand that his own life depended on his doing so, and he wrote a letter to his father accordingly.

4. Richard having mustered his followers at Nottingham, went on to Leicester to meet his antagonist, and encamped at Bosworth<sup>1</sup> on the night of August 21. The *Earl of Richmond* had arrived near the same place with



an army of five thousand men, which is supposed to have been not more than half that of the king. That day, however, Lord Stanley had come to the earl secretly at Atherstone<sup>2</sup> to assure him of his support in the coming battle. He and his brother Sir William were each at the head of a force not far off, and were only 'temporizing to save the life of his son Lord Strange. This information relieved Henry's mind of much anxiety, for at various times since he landed he had felt serious misgivings about the success of the 'enterprise. The issue was now to be decided on the following day.

5. Early in the morning both parties prepared for the battle. Richard arose before daybreak, much agitated, it is said, by dreadful dreams<sup>3</sup> that had haunted his imagination in the night-time. But he entered **Aug. 22,** the field wearing his crown upon his head, and **1485** encouraged his troops with an eloquent 'harangue. **A.D.**

There was, however, treason in his camp, and many of his followers were only seeking an opportunity to desert and take part with the enemy. A warning, indeed, had been conveyed by an unknown hand to his foremost supporter, the Duke of Norfolk, in the following rhyme,

which was discovered the night before, written on the door of his tent :—

“ Jack of Norfolk, be not too bold ;  
For Dickon, thy master, is bought and sold.”

6. Lord Stanley, who had drawn up his men at about equal distance from both armies, received messages early in the morning from both leaders desiring his immediate assistance. His policy, however, was to stand aloof to the very last moment, and he replied in each case that he would come at a convenient opportunity. Dissatisfied with this answer, Richard ordered his son to be beheaded, but was ‘persuaded to suspend the execution of the order till the day should be decided.

7. After a discharge of arrows on both sides, the armies soon came to a hand-to-hand encounter. Lord Stanley joined the earl in the midst of the engagement; and the Earl of Northumberland, on whose support Richard had relied, stood still with all his followers and looked on. The day was going hard against the king. Norfolk fell in the thickest of the fight; and his son the Earl of Surrey, after fighting with great valour, was surrounded and taken prisoner.

8. Richard endeavoured to single out his adversary, whose position on the field was pointed out to him. He suddenly rushed upon Henry’s body-guard and unhorsed ‘successively two of his attendants, one of whom, the earl’s standard-bearer, fell dead to the ground. The earl himself was in great danger, but that Sir William Stanley, who had hitherto ‘abstained from joining the combat, now endeavoured to surround the king with his force of three thousand men. Richard perceived that he was betrayed, and crying out, “Treason! treason!” endeavoured only to sell his life as dearly as possible. Overpowered by numbers, *he fell dead in the midst of his enemies.*



9. The battered crown that had fallen from Richard's head was picked up upon the field of battle, and Sir William Stanley placed it upon the head of the conqueror, who was saluted as King by his whole army. The body of Richard, on the other hand, was treated with a degree of 'indignity which expressed but too plainly the disgust excited in the minds of the people by his inhuman tyranny. It was stripped naked and thrown upon a horse, a halter being placed round the neck, and in that fashion carried into Leicester, where it was buried with little honour in the Grey Friars' church.

10. Such was the end of the last king of England of the line of the Plantagenets. In warlike qualities he was not inferior to the best of his predecessors; but his rule was such as 'alienated the hearts of the greater part of his subjects, and caused him to be remembered as a monster. In person, too, he is represented to have been deformed, with the right shoulder higher than the left; and he is traditionally regarded as a hunchback. But it may be that even his bodily defects were 'exaggerated after he was gone. Stories got abroad that he was born with teeth, and hair coming down to the shoulders, and that his birth was attended by other circumstances altogether 'repugnant to the order of nature.

11. One fact that can hardly be a misstatement is that he was small of stature—which makes it all the more remarkable that in this last battle he overthrew in personal encounter a man of great size and strength named Sir John Cheyney. He was, in fact, a great soldier-king, in whom alike the valour and the violence of his race had been matured and brought to a 'climax by civil wars and family dissensions.

12. It was inevitable that kings of this sort should give place to kings of a different stamp. His rival Henry, henceforth King Henry VII., 'inaugurated a new era, in

which prudence and policy were made to serve the interests of peace, and secure the throne, even with a doubtful title, against the 'convulsions to which it had been hitherto exposed. By his marriage with the Princess Elizabeth he was considered to have at length united the houses of York and Lancaster; and he left to his son Henry VIII., who succeeded him, a title almost as free from dispute or 'cavil as that of any king in more recent times.

13. The civil wars, in fact, had worked themselves out. The too powerful nobility had destroyed each other in these 'internecine struggles; and as the lords of each party were attainted by turns, their great estates were confiscated and passed into the hands of the crown. This gave the Tudor sovereigns an advantage that they knew well how to use. Watchful and suspicious of their nobility, they understood, as few other sovereigns did, the value of property; and under Henry VIII. the English monarchy attained a power and 'absolutism 'unparalleled before or since.

JAMES GAIRDNER: *The Houses of Lancaster and York.*

ab'-so-lút-ism, despotic power.  
 ab-stained', held off.  
 ál'-ien-át-ed, estranged.  
 anx-i'e-ty, uneasiness.  
 cav'il, question; objection.  
 cli'-max, high pitch.  
 con-vul'sions, disorders; tumults.  
 en-ter-prise, adventure; attempt.  
 ex-ag-ger-át-ed, magnified; made greater.  
 ha-rangue', speech.  
 in-au-gu-rát-ed, begun; brought in.

in-dig'-ni-ty, insult.  
 in-ter-ne'-cine, destructive of both sides; deadly.  
 per-suád'-ed, prevailed on.  
 proj'-ect, scheme; design.  
 re-pug'-nant, opposed; hostile.  
 sat-is-fac'-tion, pleasure; contentment.  
 suc-ces'sive-ly, one after the other.  
 sus-pi'-cious, doubtful.  
 tem-po-riz'-ing, gaining time.  
 un-par-al-leled, not equalled.

<sup>1</sup> Bos'worth, or Market Bosworth, 11½ miles west of Leicester.

<sup>2</sup> Ath'erstone, a town in Warwickshire, 25 miles south-west of Bosworth.

<sup>3</sup> Dreadful dreams.—See Shakespeare's *King Richard the Third*, act v.,

scene 3, where the ghosts of those whom Richard had sacrificed to his ambition appear to him, and also to Richmond; addressing words of reproach to the former, and of encouragement to the latter.

## PART III.

FROM THE ACCESSION OF HENRY VII. TO  
THE PRESENT TIME.

## 1.—THE PILGRIMAGE OF GRACE.

1536 A.D.

[Henry VIII. succeeded Henry VII. in 1509. His breach with the Papal power began in 1529, owing to his disappointment with the way in which the Papal court acted in his divorce case. Out of this personal quarrel grew the Reformation in England. In 1534 the king was declared the head of the Church in England. This was followed in 1536 by the suppression of the smaller monasteries, and the appropriation of their property and revenues by the king. This act, regarded as sacrilege by the Roman Catholics, led to risings in Lincolnshire and Yorkshire. The former was easily suppressed; but the latter assumed serious dimensions. It was headed by Robert Aske, a gentleman of Doncaster. The insurgents were accompanied by excited priests, and they gave to their enterprise the name of the *Pilgrimage of Grace*.]

1. On Sunday, October the 15th, the main army crossed the Derwent, moving direct for York. On Monday they were before the gates. The citizens were all in the interest of the rebellion, and the mayor was allowed only to take precautions for the security of property and life. The engagements which he exacted from Aske, and which were punctually observed, speak well for the discipline of the insurgents. No pillage was to be admitted, or injury of any kind. The prices which were to be paid for victuals and horse-meat were published in the camp by proclamation. The infantry, as composed of the most dangerous materials, were to remain in the field. On these terms the gates were opened, and Aske, with the horse, rode in and took possession.

2. His first act on entering York was to fix a proclamation on the doors of the cathedral, inviting all monks and nuns dispossessed from their houses to report their names and conditions, with a view to their immediate restoration.

Work is done rapidly by willing hands in the midst of a willing people. In the week which followed, by a common impulse, the king's tenants were universally expelled. The vacant 'dormitories were again peopled, the 'refectories were again filled with exulting faces. "Though it were never so late when they returned, the friars sang matins the same night."

3. Orders were next issued in Aske's name commanding all lords, knights, and gentlemen in the northern counties to repair to his presence. And now, at last, Lord Darcy<sup>1</sup> believed that the time was come when he might commit himself with safety, or rather—since the secrets of men's minds must not be lightly conjectured—he must be heard, first in his own defence, and afterwards his actions must speak for him.

4. On the night of the surrender of York he sent his steward from Pomfret<sup>2</sup> with a request for a copy of the oath and of the articles of the rising, promising, if they pleased him, to join the confederacy. The Archbishop of York,<sup>3</sup> Dr. Magnus, an old diplomatic servant of the crown, Sir Robert Constable, Lord Neville, and Sir Nicholas Babthorpe were by this time with him in the castle. His own 'compliance would involve the compliance of these, and would partially involve their sanction.

5. On the morning of the 16th or 17th he received a third letter from the king, written in grave displeasure. The truth had not been told. The king had heard, to his surprise, that Lord Darcy, instead of raising a force and taking the field, had shut himself up, with no more than twelve servants, in Pomfret. "If this be so," he said, "it is 'negligently passed.'" Lord Darcy excused himself by replying that he was not to blame; that he had done his best; but that there were sixty thousand men in arms, forty *thousand* in harness. They took what they pleased,—

horses, plate, and cattle. The whole population was with them; he could not trust his own retainers; and, preparing the king for what he was next to hear, he informed him that Pomfret itself was defenceless.

6. "The town," he said, "nor any other town, will not victual us for our money; and of such provision as we ourselves have made, the commons do stop the passage so straitly that no victual can come to us. The castle is in danger to be taken, or we to lose our lives." The defence may have been partially true. It may have been merely plausible. At all events it was necessary for him to come to some swift resolution.

7. The occupation of Lincoln by the Duke of Suffolk had set Lord Shrewsbury at liberty. Arms had been sent down and money; and the midland counties, in recovered confidence, had furnished recruits, though in limited numbers. He was now at Newark, in a condition to advance; and on the same 17th of October on which this despairing letter was written he sent forward a post to Pomfret, telling Darcy to hold his ground, and that he would join him at the earliest moment possible. Neither the rebels nor Shrewsbury could afford to lose so important a position, and both made haste.

8. Again, on the same Tuesday, the 17th, couriers brought news to Aske, at York, that the commons of Durham were hasting to join him, bringing with them Lord Latimer, Lord Lumley, and the Earl of Westmoreland. Being thus secure in his rear, the rebel leader carried his answer to Lord Darcy in person, at the head of his forces. He reached Pomfret on the afternoon of Thursday the 19th, and finding the town on his side, and knowing or suspecting Darcy's disposition, he sent in a message that the castle must be delivered, or it should be immediately stormed. A conference was demanded and agreed to. Hostages were sent in by Aske. Lord Darcy,

the archbishop, and the other noblemen, and gentlemen came out before the gate.

9. "And there and then the said Aske declared unto the said lords spiritual<sup>4</sup> and temporal the griefs of the commons; and how first the lords spiritual had not done their duty, in that they had not been plain with the king's highness for the speedy remedy and punishing of heresy and the preachers thereof; and for the taking the ornaments of the churches and abbeyes suppressed, and the violating of relics by the suppressors; the irreverent demeanour of the doers thereof; the abuse of the vestments taken extraordinary; and other their negligences in doing their duty, as well to their sovereign as to the commons.

10. "There were divers reasonings on both parts." Darcy asked for time. If not relieved, he said he would surrender on Saturday; but Aske, to whom Shrewsbury's position and intentions were well known, and who was informed privately that the few men who were in the castle would perhaps offer no resistance to an attack, "would not condescend thereto." He allowed Lord Darcy till eight o'clock the following morning, and no longer.

11. The night passed. At the hour appointed fresh delay was demanded, but with a certainty that it would not be allowed; and the alternative being an immediate storm, the draw-bridge was lowered. Pomfret Castle was in possession of the rebels, and Lord Darcy, the Archbishop of York, and every other man within the walls, high and low, were sworn to the common oath.

12. The extent of deliberate treachery on the part of Darcy may remain uncertain. His sympathies were wholly with the insurgents. It is not impossible that, when the moment came, he could not resign his loyalty without a struggle. He had taken no precautions to avert the catastrophe, if he had not consciously encouraged its approach. He saw it coming, and he waited in the most

unfavourable position to be overwhelmed ; and when the step was once taken, beyond any question he welcomed the excuse to his conscience, and passed instantly to the front rank, as among the chiefs of the enterprise.

13. The afternoon of the surrender the insurgent leaders were sitting at dinner at the great table in the hall. A letter was brought and given to Lord Darcy. He read it, dropped it on the cloth, and "suddenly gave a great sigh." Aske, who was sitting opposite to him, stretched his hand for the paper across the board. It was brief, and carried no signature. Lord Shrewsbury, the writer merely said, would be at Pomfret the same night.

14. The sigh may be easily construed ; but if it was a symptom of repentance, Darcy showed no other. A council of war was held when the dinner was over ; and, bringing his military knowledge into use, he pointed out the dangerous spots, he marked the lines of defence, and told off the commanders to their posts. Before night all the passages of the Don by which Shrewsbury could advance were secured.

[The insurrection lasted several months. It was suppressed partly by the negotiations of the Duke of Norfolk, and partly by the swelling of a stream which protected the royal army. Aske and Lord Darcy and several others were thrown into prison, and most of them were executed. Lord Darcy was beheaded on Tower Hill (1537).]

J. A. FROUDE: *History of England (Henry VIII.)*.

al-ter-na-tive, other choice.  
ca-tas-tro-phe, evil event; calamity.  
com-pil-ance, agreement.  
con-fer-ence, meeting.  
con-fi-dence, trust; reliance.  
de-lib-er-ate, well-considered; in-  
de-mean-our, conduct. [tended.  
dis-po-si-tion, tendency; character.

dis-pos-sessed', turned out.  
dor-mi-tor-ies, sleeping-rooms.  
neg-li-gent-ly, carelessly.  
pre-cau-tions, measures beforehand.  
re-fec-tor-ies, eating-rooms.  
re-lieved', set free; helped.  
strait-ly, strictly; closely.  
treach-er-y, faithlessness.

<sup>1</sup> Lord Dar'cy, of Templehurst, a nobleman of great influence in Yorkshire, whose loyalty was wavering, but who had been deterred from joining the malcontents by the fear of failure.

He was an old man, and had earned a high reputation as a soldier. In Parliament he had spoken strongly against the separation from Rome.

<sup>2</sup> Pom'fret, properly Pontefract, a

town on the Aire, in the West Riding of Yorkshire. The famous castle is now in ruins. In it Richard II. died; and in it Rivers, Grey, and Vaughan were executed, by order of Richard III.

<sup>3</sup> The Archbishop of York, Edward Lee. He was pardoned, as he

was believed to have yielded to compulsion.

<sup>4</sup> Lords spiritual, the archbishops and bishops of the Church of England, who have seats in the House of Lords. The other lords are called "Lords temporal."

## 2.—QUEEN MARY AND PHILIP OF SPAIN.

1557 A.D.

[Philip of Spain had married Queen Mary in order to secure the aid of England against France; but the marriage was very unpopular in England. The English disliked the Spanish alliance, and they disliked Philip personally. Philip also hated the English people; and when his wife bore him no children he grew tired of her and treated her coldly. Mary's life was thoroughly unhappy. She knew that she was distrusted by her people; and she felt keenly the cold neglect she suffered from her husband, whom nevertheless she fondly loved.]

SCENE.—London, a hall in the Palace.

Queen, Sir Nicholas Heath (Archbishop of York and Lord Chancellor)

*Heath.* Madam,

I do assure you, that it must be looked to:  
Calais is but ill garrisoned; in Guisnes<sup>1</sup>  
Are scarce two hundred men, and the French fleet  
Rule in the narrow seas. It must be looked to,  
If war should fall between yourself and France;  
Or you will lose your Calais.

*Mary.*

It shall be looked to;

I wish you a good morning, good Sir Nicholas:

Here is the King.

[*Exit Heath.*

*Enter PHILIP.*

*Philip.*

Sir Nicholas tells you true,  
And you must look to Calais when I go.

*Mary.* Go! must you go, indeed—again—so soon?

Why, nature's 'licensed 'vagabond, the swallow,  
That might live always in the sun's warm heart,  
Stays longer here in our poor north than you;—  
Knows where he nested—ever comes again.

*Philip.* And, Madam, so shall I.

*Mary.*

Oh, will you—will you?

I am faint with fear that you will come no more.

*Philip.* Ay, ay; but many voices call me hence.



*Mary.* Voices—I hear unhappy rumours—nay,  
I say not, I believe. What voices call you  
Dearer than mine, that should be dearest to you?  
Alas, my Lord! what voices, and how many?

*Philip.* The voices of Castile and Aragon,  
Granada, Naples, Sicily, and Milan,—  
The voices of Franche-Comté, and the Netherlands,—  
The voices of Peru and Mexico,  
Tunis, and Oran,<sup>2</sup> and the Philippines,  
And all the fair spice-islands of the East.

*Mary* (*admiringly*). You are the mightiest monarch upon earth,  
I but a little Queen ; and so, indeed,  
Need you the more ; and wherefore could you not  
Helm the huge vessel of your state, my liege,  
Here, by the side of her who loves you most ?

*Philip.* No, Madam, no!—a candle in the sun  
Is all but smoke—a star beside the moon  
Is all but lost : your people will not crown me :  
Your people are as cheerless as your clime,—  
Hate me and mine ; witness the brawls, the gibbets—  
Here swings a Spaniard—there an Englishman :  
The peoples are unlike as their 'complexion ;  
Yet will I be your swallow and return—  
But now I cannot bide.

*Mary.* Not to help *me*?  
They hate *me* also for my love to you,  
My Philip; and these judgments on the land—  
Harvestless autumns, horrible 'agues, plague—

*Philip.* The blood and sweat of 'heretics at the stake  
Is God's best dew upon the barren field.  
Burn more!

*Mary.* I will, I will ; and you will stay.

*Philip.* Have I not said? Madam, I came to sue  
Your Council and yourself to declare war.

*Mary.* Sir, there are many English in your ranks  
To help your battle.

*Philip.* So far, good. I say  
I came to sue your Council and yourself  
To declare war against the King of France.

*Mary.* Not to see me?

*Philip.* Ay, Madam, to see you.

Unalterably and 'pestering fond! [*Aside.*]

But, soon or late you must have war with France;

King Henry<sup>3</sup> warms your traitors at his hearth.

Carew is there, and Thomas Stafford there.

Courtenay, belike—

*Mary.* A fool and featherhead!

*Philip.* Ay, but they use his name. In brief, this Henry

Stirs up your land against you, to the intent

That you may lose your English heritage.<sup>4</sup>

And then, your Scottish namesake marrying

The Dauphin, he would weld France, England, Scotland,

Into one sword to hack at Spain and me.

*Mary.* And yet the Pope is now 'colleagu'd with France;

You make your wars upon him down in Italy:—

Philip, can that be well?

*Philip.* Content you, Madam;

You must abide my judgment, and my father's,

Who deems it a most just and holy war.

The Pope would cast the Spaniard out of Naples:

He calls us worse than Jews, Moors, Saracens.

The Pope has pushed his horns beyond his 'mitre—

Beyond his province. Now,

Duke Alva will but touch him on the horns,

And he withdraws; and of his holy head—

For Alva is true son of the true Church—

No hair is harmed. Will you not help me here?

*Mary.* Alas! the Council will not hear of war.

They say your wars are not the wars of England.

They will not lay more taxes on a land

So hunger-nipt and wretched; and you know

The crown is poor. We have given the church-lands

back:

The Nobles would not; nay, they clapt their hands

Upon their swords when asked; and therefore God

Is hard upon the people. What's to be done?

Sir, I will move them in your cause again,

And we will raise us loans and subsidies

Among the merchants; and Sir Thomas Gresham<sup>5</sup>  
Will aid us. There is Antwerp and the Jews.

*Philip.* Madam, my thanks.

*Mary.* And you will stay your going?

*Philip.* And further to discourage and lay lame  
The plots of France, although you love her not,  
You must proclaim Elizabeth your heir.  
She stands between you and the Queen of Scots.

*Mary.* The Queen of Scots at least is Catholic.

*Philip.* Ay, Madam, Catholic; but I will not have  
The King of France the King of England too.

*Mary.* But she's a heretic, and, when I am gone,  
Brings the new learning back.

*Philip.* It must be done:  
You must proclaim Elizabeth your heir.

*Mary.* Then it is done; but you will stay your going  
Somewhat beyond your settled purpose?

*Philip.* No!

*Mary.* What! not one day?

*Philip.* You beat upon the rock.

*Mary.* And I am broken there.

*Philip.* Is this a place  
To wail in, Madam? what! a public hall!  
Go in, I pray you.

ALFRED TENNYSON: *Queen Mary, a Drama.*

a'-gues, fevers.

col-leagued', allied.

com-plex-ion, colour of skin.

her'e-tics, enemies of the faith; here  
applied to Protestants.

li'-censed, privileged.

mi'-tre, papal crown.

pes-ter-ing-ly, annoyingly.

pro-claim', declare; announce.

vag-a-bond, wanderer.

<sup>1</sup> Guisnes (*Geen*), a town 57 miles south of Calais.

<sup>2</sup> O'ran, a town of Algeria, on the Mediterranean; taken by the Spaniards in 1505.

<sup>3</sup> King Henry, Henry II. of France, reigned from 1547 till 1559.

<sup>4</sup> Your English heritage, Calais, which had been in the possession of England since 1347.

<sup>5</sup> Sir Thomas Gresh'am, a wealthy merchant of London who founded the Royal Exchange there in Elizabeth's reign.



## 3.—MARY QUEEN OF SCOTS.

1587 A.D.

[Mary Stewart, Queen of Scots, was sent to France in 1548, when she was in her sixth year, to prevent Henry VIII. carrying out his scheme of marrying her to his son Edward. Ten years later, she married the Dauphin. On the death of her husband in 1561 she returned to Scotland; but during her absence the Reformation had made great progress there, and she found herself entirely out of sympathy with her people. At last they rose in arms against her. After her defeat at Langside in 1568 she fled to England, and cast herself on the clemency of Elizabeth. In England she was the hope of the Roman Catholics, who desired to see her fill the throne. In 1586 a plot was discovered, which aimed at the death of Elizabeth, and the succession of Mary. For her share in this plot, Mary was executed in Fotheringay Castle, 1587.]

1. To all the charms of beauty and the utmost elegance of external form, she added those accomplishments which render their impression irresistible; polite, 'affable, 'insinuating, sprightly, and capable of speaking and writing with equal ease and dignity; sudden, however, and violent in all her attachments, because her heart was warm and unsuspecting; impatient of contradiction, because she had been accustomed from her infancy to be treated as a queen; no stranger, on some occasions, to 'dissimulation, which, in that 'perfidious court where she received her education, was reckoned among the necessary arts of government; not insensible of flattery, or unconscious of that pleasure with which almost every woman beholds the influence of her own beauty.

2. Formed with the qualities which we love, not with the talents that we admire, she was an agreeable woman rather than an illustrious queen. The 'vivacity of her spirit, not sufficiently tempered with sound judgment, and the warmth of her heart, which was not at all times under the restraint of 'discretion, betrayed her both into errors and into crimes. To say that she was always unfortunate will not account for that long and almost uninterrupted succession of 'calamities which befell her; we *must likewise add* that she was often imprudent.

3. Her passion for Darnley was rash, youthful, and excessive. And though the sudden transition to the opposite extreme was the natural effect of her ill-requested love, and of his ingratitude, insolence, and brutality, yet neither these nor Bothwell's artful address and important services can justify her attachment to that nobleman. Even the manners of the age, licentious as they were, are no apology for this unhappy passion; nor can they induce us to look on that tragical and infamous scene<sup>1</sup> which followed upon it, with less abhorrence.

4. Humanity will draw a veil over this part of her character, which it cannot approve; and may, perhaps, prompt some to impute her actions to her situation more than to her disposition, and to lament the unhappiness of the former, rather than accuse the perverseness of the latter. Mary's sufferings exceed, both in degree and in duration, those tragical distresses which fancy has figured to excite sorrow and commiseration; and while we survey them, we are apt altogether to forget her frailties; we think of her faults with less indignation, and approve of our tears as if they were shed for a person who had attained much nearer to pure virtue.

5. With regard to the queen's person, a circumstance not to be omitted in writing the history of a female reign, all contemporary authors agree in ascribing to Mary the utmost beauty of countenance and elegance of shape of which the human form is capable. Her hair was black, though, according to the fashion of that age, she frequently wore borrowed locks, and of different colours. Her eyes were of dark gray, her complexion was exquisitely fine, and her hands and arms remarkably delicate, both as to shape and colour.

6. Her stature was of a height that rose to the majestic. She danced, she walked, and rode with equal grace. Her taste for music was just, and she both sung and played

upon the lute with uncommon skill. Toward the end of her life she began to grow fat; and her long confinement, and the coldness of the houses in which she had been imprisoned, brought on a 'rheumatism which deprived her of the use of her limbs. "No man," says Brantome, "ever beheld her person without admiration and love, or will read her history without sorrow."

WILLIAM ROBERTSON: *History of Scotland*.

ab-hor'rence, great hatred.  
af-fa-ble, easily approached; kind.  
a-pol-o-gy, excuse; defence.  
ca-lam-i-ties, misfortunes; disasters.  
com-mis-er-a-tion, pity.  
con-tem-po-ra-ry, living at the same time.  
dis-crè'tion, prudence.  
dis-sim-u-la'tion, pretence; feigning.

ex-qui-site-ly, matchlessly; delicately.  
frail-ties, weaknesses.  
in-sin-u-ât-ing, winning confidence.  
in-so-lence, rudeness.  
per-fid'i-ous, false-hearted; faithless.  
per-verse-ness, crossness; obstinacy.  
rheu-ma-tism, a disease of the muscles and joints.  
vi-vac-i-ty, liveliness.

<sup>1</sup> Tragical and infamous scene, the murder of Darnley, contrived by Bothwell, and approved by Mary, followed as it was by her marriage with

the murderer. The house at Edinburgh in which Darnley lay sick was blown up with gunpowder, and his dead body was found in the garden (1567 A.D.).

#### 4.—THE EXPLOITS OF DRAKE.

1587 A.D.

[At the time referred to, it was well known that Philip of Spain was making great preparations for the invasion of England. Drake's object was to inflict damage on the enemy, and to retard his operations as much as possible. Drake was a Devonshire man, having been born at Tavistock in 1545. On his return from a voyage round the world in 1580, he was knighted by Elizabeth. His exploit of 1587 he described as "singeing the Spanish monarch's beard." In the following year he commanded as vice-admiral under Lord Howard, and helped to defeat the Armada. He died in an American port in 1596.]

1. On the 2nd April, Francis Drake sailed from Plymouth with four ships belonging to the Queen, and with twenty-four 'furnished by the merchants of London and other private individuals. It was a bold 'buccaneering expedition—combining 'chivalrous enterprise with the chance of enormous profit—which was most suited to the *character of English adventurers at that expanding epoch.*

2. For it was by England, not by Elizabeth, that the quarrel with Spain was felt to be a mortal one. It was England, not its sovereign, that was 'instinctively arming, at all points, to grapple with the great enemy of European liberty. It was the spirit of self-help, of self-reliance, which was prompting the English nation to take the great work of the age into its own hands.

3. "The wind commands me away," said Drake, on the 2nd April 1587; "our ship is under sail. God grant that we may so live in his fear that the enemy may have cause to say that God doth fight for her Majesty abroad as well as at home!"

4. In latitude 40° he spoke two Zeeland ships,<sup>1</sup> homeward bound, and obtained information of great warlike stores accumulating in Cadiz<sup>2</sup> and Lisbon.<sup>3</sup> His mind was instantly made up. Fortunately, the 'pinnacle which the Queen despatched with orders to stay his hand in the very act of smiting her great adversary, did not sail fast enough to overtake the swift 'corsair and his fleet. Sir Francis had too promptly obeyed the wind when it "commanded him away," to receive the royal countermand.

5. On the 19th April, the English ships entered the harbour of Cadiz and destroyed ten thousand tons of shipping, with their contents, in the very face of a dozen great galleys, which the nimble English vessels soon drove under their forts for shelter. Two nights and a day Sir Francis, that "hater of idleness," was steadily doing his work—unloading, rifing, 'scuttling, sinking, and burning those transport ships which contained a portion of the preparations painfully made by Philip for his great enterprise.<sup>4</sup>

6. Pipe-staves and spikes, horse-shoes and saddles, timber and cutlasses, wine, oil, figs, raisins, biscuits, and flour, a 'miscellaneous mass of 'ingredients, long brewing for the trouble of England, were emptied into the harbour; and before the second night the blaze of a hundred and fifty

burning vessels played merrily upon the grim walls of Philip's fortresses. Some of these ships were of the largest size then known. There was one belonging to Marquis Santa Cruz, of 1500 tons ; there was a Biscayan of 1200 ; there were several others of 1000, 800, and of nearly equal dimensions.

7. At Lisbon, Marquis Santa Cruz, Lord High Admiral of Spain, and Generalissimo of the invasion, looked on mortified and amazed, but offered no combat, while the Plymouth privateersman swept the harbour of the greatest monarch of the world. After thoroughly accomplishing his work, Drake sent a message to Santa Cruz, proposing to exchange his prisoners for such Englishmen as might then be confined in Spain. But the marquis denied all prisoners. Thereupon Sir Francis decided to sell his captives to the Moors, and to appropriate the proceeds of the sale towards the purchase of English slaves out of the same bondage. Such was the fortune of war in the sixteenth century.

8. Having dealt these great blows, Drake set sail again from Lisbon, and, twenty leagues from St. Michael,<sup>5</sup> fell in with one of those Spanish East Indiamen called caracks,<sup>6</sup> then the great wonder of the seas. This vessel, *San Felipe* by name, with a cargo of 'extraordinary value, was easily captured, and Sir Francis now determined to return. He had done a good piece of work in a few weeks, but he was by no means of opinion that he had materially crippled the enemy. On the contrary, he gave the government warning as to the enormous power and vast preparations of Spain. "There would be forty thousand men under way ere long," he said, "well equipped and provisioned ;" and he stated, as the result of personal observation, that England could not be too 'energetic in its measures of resistance.

9. *Perhaps* the most precious result of the expedition



was the lesson which the Englishmen had thus learned in handling the great galleys of Spain. It might soon stand them in stead. The little war-vessels which had come from Plymouth had sailed round and round these vast 'unwieldy hulks, and had fairly driven them off the field, with very slight damage to themselves. Sir Francis had already taught the mariners of England, even if he had done nothing else by this famous Cadiz expedition, that an 'armada of Spain might not be so invincible as men imagined.

J. L. MOTLEY: *History of the United Netherlands.*

**ap-pro'-pri-ate**, apply; set apart.  
**ar-ma'-da**, a fleet of war-ships.  
**buc-can-ear-ing**, robbing; freeboot-  
 ing.  
**chiy'-al-rous**, brave; heroic.  
**cor-sair**, pirate.  
**en-er-get-ic**, active.  
**ex-traor-di-na-ry**, unusual; rare.

**fur'-nished**, supplied.  
**in-gre-di-ents**, compounds; elements.  
**in-stinc-tive-ly**, by a natural im-  
 pulse.  
**mis-cel-la'-ne-ous**, mixed.  
**pin-nace**, a small ship.  
**scut-tling**, cutting holes in ships.  
**un-wield-y**, clumsy.

<sup>1</sup> **Zee'land ships**, Dutch ships, from Zeeland, the province at the mouth of the Rhine and the Scheldt.

<sup>2</sup> **Ca'diz**, a commercial town on the south-west coast of Spain.

<sup>3</sup> **Lis'bon**, the capital of Portugal, with a splendid natural harbour at the mouth of the Tagus.

<sup>4</sup> **His great enterprise**, the invasion of England.

<sup>5</sup> **St. Michael**, the largest of the Azores, islands in the Atlantic belonging to Portugal. "Twenty leagues" is 80 miles, a league being 8 miles.

<sup>6</sup> **Car'acks**, large merchant ships, used by the Spaniards.

## 5.—THE SPANISH ARMADA.

1588 A.D.

[The object of Philip of Spain, in sending the Armada against England, was to inflict a death-blow on Protestantism in Europe, and to restore the authority of the Pope in England. The expedition had been many months in preparation. It had started several times, and had been driven back by storms and accidents of various kinds. Its first commander, the Marquis of Santa Cruz, had died, and it was now placed under the charge of the Duke of Medina Sidonia, a man of no skill in seamanship. The land forces, and indeed the whole expedition, were under the command of Alexander Farnese, Duke of Parma, then in the Netherlands.]

1. At last, on the 28th, 29th, and 30th May, 1588, the fleet, which had been waiting at Lisbon more than a month for favourable weather, set sail from that port, after hav-

ing been duly blessed by the Cardinal Archduke Albert, Viceroy of Portugal.

2. There were rather more than one hundred and thirty ships in all, divided into ten 'squadrons. The total tonnage of the fleet was 59,120; the number of guns was 3,165. Of Spanish troops there were 19,295 on board; there were 8,252 sailors and 2,088 galley-slaves. The grand total of those embarked was about 30,000.



3. The plan was simple. Medina Sidonia was to proceed straight from Lisbon to Calais roads; there he was to wait for the Duke of Parma, who was to come forth from Newport,<sup>1</sup> Sluys,<sup>2</sup> and Dunkerque,<sup>3</sup> bringing with him his 17,000 'veterans, and to assume the chief command of the whole expedition. They were then to cross the Channel to Dover, land the army of Farnese, reinforced with 6,000 Spaniards from the fleet, and with these 23,000 men Farnese was to march at once upon London. Medina Sidonia was to seize and fortify the Isle of Wight, guard the entrance of the harbours against any interference from the Dutch and English fleets, and—so soon as the conquest of England had been effected—he was to proceed to Ireland.

4. A *strange* omission had, however, been made in the

plan from first to last. The commander of the whole expedition was the Duke of Parma; on his head was the whole responsibility. Not a gun was to be fired, if it could be avoided, until he had come forth with his veterans to make his junction with the Invincible Armada off Calais. Yet there was no arrangement whatever to enable him to come forth—not the slightest provision to effect that junction. It would almost seem that the letter-writer of the Escorial<sup>4</sup> had been quite ignorant of the existence of the Dutch fleets of Dunkerk, Newport, and Flushing,<sup>5</sup> although he had certainly received information enough of this formidable obstacle to his plan.....

5. Thus there were bread, beef, and powder enough; there were monks and priests enough; standards, galley-slaves, and 'inquisitors enough; but there were no light vessels in the Armada, and no heavy vessels in Parma's fleet. Medina could not go to Farnese, nor could Farnese come to Medina. The junction was likely to be difficult, and yet it had never once entered the head of Philip or his 'counsellors to provide for that difficulty. The king never seemed to imagine that Farnese, with forty thousand or fifty thousand soldiers in the Netherlands, a fleet of three hundred transports, and power to dispose of very large funds for one great purpose, could be kept in prison by a fleet of Dutch skippers and corsairs.

6. Where was Farnese? Most impatiently the Golden Duke paced the deck of the *Saint Martin*. Most eagerly were thousands of eyes strained towards the eastern horizon to catch the first glimpse of Farnese's flotilla. But the day wore on to its close, and still the same 'inexplicable and 'mysterious silence prevailed. There was utter solitude on the waters in the direction of Gravelines<sup>6</sup> and Dunkerk, not a sail upon the sea in the quarter where bustle and activity had been most expected. The mystery was profound; for it had never entered the head of any man in

the Armada that Farnese could not come out when he chose.....

7. As the twilight deepened, the moon became totally obscured, dark cloud-masses spread over the heavens, the sea grew black, distant thunder rolled, and the sob of an approaching tempest became distinctly 'audible. Such indications of a westerly gale were not encouraging to those 'cumbrous vessels, with the 'treacherous quicksands of Flanders under their lee.

8. At an hour past midnight it was so dark that it was difficult for the most practised eye to pierce far into the gloom. But a faint drip of oars now struck the ears of the Spaniards as they watched from the decks. A few moments afterwards the sea became suddenly 'luminous, and six flaming vessels appeared at a slight distance, bearing steadily down upon them before the wind and tide.

9. There were men in the Armada who had been at the siege of Antwerp only three years before. They remembered with horror the devil-ships of Gianibelli,<sup>7</sup> those floating volcanoes, which had seemed to rend earth and ocean, whose explosion had laid so many thousands of soldiers dead at a blow, and which had shattered the bridge and floating forts of Farnese, as if they had been toys of glass. They knew, too, that the famous engineer was at that moment in England.

10. In a moment one of those horrible panics, which spread with such contagious rapidity among large bodies of men, seized upon the Spaniards. There was a yell throughout the fleet, "The fire-ships of Antwerp! the fire-ships of Antwerp!" and in an instant every cable was cut, and frantic attempts were made by each galleon and galeasse to escape what seemed 'imminent destruction. The confusion was beyond description. Four or five of the largest ships became entangled with one another. Two others were set *on fire by the flaming vessels*, and were consumed.

11. Medina Sidonia, who had been warned, even before his departure from Spain, that some such artifice would probably be attempted, and who had even, early that morning, sent out a party of sailors in a pinnace to search for indications of the scheme, was not surprised or dismayed. He gave orders, as well as might be, that every ship, after the danger should be past, was to return to its post, and await his further orders. But it was useless in that moment of unreasonable panic to issue commands. The despised Mantuan, who had met with so many rebuffs at Philip's court, and who—owing to official 'incredulity'—had been but partly successful in his magnificent enterprise at Antwerp, had now, by the mere terror of his name, inflicted more damage on Philip's Armada than had hitherto been accomplished by Howard<sup>8</sup> and Drake, Hawkins<sup>9</sup> and Frobisher<sup>10</sup> combined.

[The Spanish fleet sailed northwards. The English ships pursued it for some time; but they were compelled to retire, as their ammunition ran short. After the Armada passed the Orkneys it encountered a violent storm, and many vessels were wrecked. Not half of the splendid navy returned to Spain.]

J. L. MOTLEY: *History of the United Netherlands.*

au'-di-ble, able to be heard.

coun'-sel-lors, advisers.

cum'-brous, heavy.

for'-mi-da-ble, serious; causing fear.

im-mi-nent, threatening.

im-pa-tient-ly, fretfully; eagerly.

in-cre-dū'-li-ty, unbelief; unwillingness to believe.

in-di-ca-tions, signs.

in-ex-pli-ca-ble, not able to be explained.

in-quis-i-tors, members of the court of the Inquisition.

lit'-mi-nous, lighted up.

mys-te'-ri-ous, obscure; puzzling.

re-spon-si-bil-i-ty, duty; accountability.

squad'-rons, divisions.

teach-er-ous, misleading; dangerous.

vet'-er-ans, experienced soldiers; literally, old men.

<sup>1</sup> New'port, a fortified town in West Flanders, 10 miles south-west of Ostend.

<sup>2</sup> Sluys (Sloos), a fortified town in Zealand, 22 miles north-east of Ostend.

<sup>3</sup> Dun'kerk, a sea-port of France, 24 miles north-east of Calais. At the time spoken of it belonged to Flanders. It was sold to Louis XIV. of France by Charles II. of England for £200,000, in 1664.

<sup>4</sup> The Esco'rial, the magnificent palace of the Spanish kings, 25 miles north-west of Madrid; built by Philip II., 1563-86. The "letter writer" is Philip.

<sup>5</sup> Flush'ing, a sea-port in Zealand, on the south of the island of Walcheren.

<sup>6</sup> Gravelines', a sea-port 12 miles north-east of Calais.

<sup>7</sup> *Gianibelli*, a famous Italian engineer, a native of Mantua.

<sup>8</sup> *Howard*, Charles, Lord Howard of Effingham, Lord High Admiral of England. Though a Roman Catholic, he took the command against the Armada.

<sup>9</sup> *Hawkins*, Sir John, a famous

English seaman; a native of Plymouth. He founded a hospital at Chatham, for the relief of wounded and decayed seamen.

<sup>10</sup> *Frobisher*, Sir Martin, an eminent seaman; a native of Doncaster. He was an Arctic explorer.

## 6.—"MERRIE ENGLANDE."

1600 A.D.

1. English society made rapid strides of improvement during the Tudor Period. The Elizabethan houses<sup>1</sup> greatly surpassed those of Henry the Seventh's reign, both in point of internal convenience and outward beauty. The furniture, too, displayed increasing artistic taste—carved tables and 'buffets, richly ornamented clocks, and Turkey carpets for the covering of couches, having become not uncommon in the mansions of the great.

2. The *Gull's Hornbook*, written by the dramatist Dekker,<sup>2</sup> supplies us with a picture of fast London life in the opening of the seventeenth century. The morning toilet of the gallant—his lounge in the fashionable walk at St. Paul's Churchyard—his chance visit to the neighbouring book-stalls—his practice in the schools for dancing and fencing—the elaborate apparatus of his smoking machine, which he kindles in the 'smoking-ordinary—the eleven o'clock shilling dinner at the fashionable eating-house—the cards and pipes that followed—the stool upon the stage, where he smokes and makes audible remarks upon the actors in the middle of their tenderest or most tremendous parts—the 'revelries of the closing night, and the perilous homeward walk, at nine or so, through the dark, thief-swarming lanes, lighted only by the rare and feeble glimmer of the watch-lantern, rise in succession as we read the vivid pages.

3. An evening or rather an afternoon party was then

amused, as we are now, chiefly with music, dancing, and games of various kinds. Playing on the 'cittern or the 'virginals accompanied by the voice, dancing *corantos*, *lavoltas*, or that extremely rigid dance called *pavo*<sup>8</sup> or *pavin* after the solemn strutting peacock, varied with backgammon, shovel-board, and different games at cards, sped the hours quickly on. In town the theatre was a great resort. From one o'clock till four, that is during most of the interval between dinner and supper, the flag on the roof of the play-house fluttered its gaudy announcement that the play was going on.

4. The 'pageant still continued to be not merely the delight of the citizens, but also the stated amusement of the court. Of all the 'variegated shows which the time produced, the displays at Kenilworth<sup>4</sup> in honour of Elizabeth's visit to Dudley<sup>5</sup> bear the palm. Tinselled pasteboard giants, with real trumpeters inside, greeted Her Grace as she neared the gate. A porter, dressed as Hercules, presented her with the keys. Then over the pool or moat came a mock Lady of the Lake, glittering with classical gifts of the heathen gods—grain in silver bowls from Ceres, wine and grapes from Bacchus, instruments of music from Apollo, and so forth. What with music, fireworks, hunting, bear-baiting, pageants on the water with Arion singing on the dolphin's back, 'masques, banquets, and plays, it was not Dudley's fault if his royal mistress lacked entertainment in his castle.

5. The Christmas that was kept in old English manor-houses at this time was a 'picturesque and hearty festival. With shouts of merriment on Christmas Eve the huge Yule-log<sup>6</sup> was dragged into the hall, wetting the rushes underfoot with the drip of its half-thawed 'icicles. Smoking torches flared red in the frosty air outside; within, the wide chimney gaped for its expected load, while on the 'antlered walls around, decked with the spoils and

weapons of the greenwood, glittered the glossy green of holly and ivy leaves, the former sprinkled thick with its coral berries. Next day, when the feast time came and the guests were seated, amid a braying of horns a stout cook staggered in, bearing on a silver dish the choicest fare of the Christmas table—a boar's head, 'garnished, as were many dishes then, with sprigs of 'rosemary.

6. Scarcely inferior to the 'Saturnalia of Christmas time were the games and sports that ushered in an English May. At midnight, or a little after, on the first of May, all the young men and girls of the village or parish sallied out into the woods, where they plucked green boughs and twined the spring blossoms into brilliant wreaths and 'festoons.

7. About sunrise they returned in procession, while many yoke of oxen, gaily dressed with flowers, dragged the May-pole to the place where it was to stand. This central standard of the sport streamed with ribbons and kerchiefs of various colours, and was wreathed from base to summit with flowery branches. Round it the dance circled all day long in ceaseless waves of jollity, every band, as it wearied, being 'recruited or replaced by those who had been resting and refreshing themselves in the arbours on the green. The great London May-pole was set up on Cornhill, where it "towered high above the steeple of St. Andrew's."

8. That superstition still brooded heavily over the English mind, even in its highest phases, is well known. Every reader of the domestic annals of the time is familiar with stories of supposed witchcraft, and the cruel means that were adopted to crush the unfortunate people, on whom age, ugliness, or some equally cogent cause, had drawn suspicion. Then too the 'astrologer plied his gainful trade, turning the golden lustre of the stars into lustre of an earthlier kind—the yellow light of gold. And the



'alchemist had not yet suspended his wasting and vain search in the 'alembic and the 'crucible. Fairies danced under every green tree, and ghosts promenaded the churchyard from midnight until cock-crowing. We can scarcely blame the superstitions of these ages, when we remember the spirit world, peopled with shapes of loveliness and mirth and terror, that supplied our Shakspeare with material for the weird 'incantations of Macbeth, for the "pale majesty of Denmark," and for the elfish fun and sweet poetic grace of the *Midsummer-Night's Dream*.

W. F. COLLIER: *History of England*.

**al'-che-mist**, a searcher for gold in baser metals.  
**a-lem'-bic**, a vessel used in distilling.  
**ant'-lered**, hung with antlers, or deers' antlers.  
**as-trol'-o-ger**, star-prophet. [horns.]  
**buf'-fets**, sideboards.  
**cit'-tern**, a musical instrument; a kind of guitar.  
**cru'-ci-ble**, a melting-pot.  
**fes'-toons**, garlands.  
**gar-nished**, ornamented.  
**i'-ci-cles**, hanging masses of ice.  
**in-can-ta-tions**, charms.

**masques**, plays.  
**pa'-geant**, procession; show.  
**pic-tu-resque**, striking.  
**re-cruit'-ed**, strengthened.  
**rev'-el-ries**, noisy feasts.  
**rose'-ma-ry**, a fragrant plant.  
**sat-ur-na-li-a**, excesses; revelries.  
**smok-ing or-di-na-ry**, public smoking-room.  
**va-ri-e-gat'-ed**, chequered; of mingled colours.  
**vir'-gin-als**, a musical instrument, like a small pianoforte.

<sup>1</sup> **Elizabeth'an** houses, houses built in the style adopted in the reign of Queen Elizabeth.

<sup>2</sup> **Dek'ker**, Thomas, a contemporary of Ben Jonson; died about 1641. His "Gull's Hornbook" is a tract, not a drama. Sir Walter Scott drew largely from it in his "Fortunes of Nigel."

<sup>3</sup> **Pa'vo**, the Latin for a peacock.

<sup>4</sup> **Ken'ilworth**, a town, with an ancient castle,  $4\frac{1}{2}$  miles north of Warwick.

<sup>5</sup> **Dud'ley**, Robert, Earl of Leicester, chief favourite of Elizabeth's later years. He was suspected of aspiring to the hand of the Queen, and of having murdered his wife, Amy Robsart, to effect his purpose. The story is told, but not with historical accuracy, in Sir Walter Scott's "Kenilworth."

<sup>6</sup> **Yule-log**, a large log of wood formerly put on the fire on Christmas eve. *Yule* is another name for Christmas.

## 7.—THE GRAND REMONSTRANCE.

1641 A.D.

[The struggle between the Crown and the Commons reached a crisis in the Parliament of 1641. Then for the first time since the accession of the Stewarts, the House of Commons showed itself strong enough to cope with the King. In the first four years of his reign (1625-29) Charles I. dissolved Parliament three times. During the next eleven years (1629-40) he ruled without a Parliament, raising a

revenue by imposing illegal taxes, such as ship-money. In 1640, his necessities compelled him to call his fourth Parliament; but he dissolved it within three weeks, because it refused to grant supplies until grievances had been redressed. The Scots having seized Newcastle, Charles called a great Council of Peers at York. The Peers advised him to summon another Parliament. The famous Long Parliament then met. It began its work by reversing the tyrannical Acts of the previous eleven years. Laud and Strafford were imprisoned; the latter was beheaded at once. The King was known to have been intriguing with the Army, and he made a treaty with the Scots. The Commons then drew up the *Grand Remonstrance*, which was a detailed statement of their grievances, intended to inform the Nation what the Parliament had already done, and what yet remained to do. The fact that it was an appeal to the People was the reason of the great importance attached to the question of having the document printed.]

1. This most memorable State paper, commonly so 'garbled, and almost invariably so misrepresented, remains nevertheless a fact living and 'accessible to us—a solid piece of actual history, retaining the form which its authors gave to it, and breathing still some part of the life which animated them. It embodies the case of the Parliament against the Ministers of the King. It is the most 'authentic statement ever put forth of the wrongs endured by all classes of the English people, during the first thirteen years of the reign of Charles the First; and, for that reason, the most complete justification upon record of the Great Rebellion. It possesses, for the student of that event, the special interest which arises from the fact, that it 'demonstrates more clearly than any other paper of the time, by its close and powerful reasoning, how inseparable religion and politics had become, and how each was to be stabbed only through the side of the other.

2. It describes the condition of the three kingdoms at the time when the Long Parliament<sup>1</sup> met, and the measures taken thereon to redress still 'remediable wrongs, and deal out justice on their authors. Enumerating the statutes passed at the same time for the good of the subject, and his safety in future years, it points out what yet waited to be done to complete that necessary work, and the grave obstructions that had arisen, in each of the three kingdoms, *to intercept its completion.*

3. It warns the people of dangerous and desperate 'intrigues to recover ascendancy for the Court faction; hints not obscurely at serious defections in progress, even from the popular 'phalanx; accuses the bishops of a design to Romanize the English Church; denounces the effects of ill counsels in Scotland and Ireland; and calls upon the King to dismiss evil counsellors. It is, in brief, an appeal to the country, consisting, on the one hand, of a dignified assertion of the power of the House of Commons in reëstablishing the public liberties; and, on the other, of an urgent representation of its powerlessness either to protect the future or save the past, without immediate present support against Papists and their favourers in the House of Lords, and their 'unscrupulous 'partisans near the Throne.

4. There is in it, nevertheless, not a word of disrespect to the person or the just 'privileges of royalty, and nothing that the fair supporters of a formed Church Establishment might not frankly have approved and accepted. Of all the State papers of the period, it is in these points much the most remarkable; nor, without very carefully reading it, is it easy to understand rightly, or with any exactness, either the issue 'challenged by the King when he unfurled his standard, or the objects and desires of the men who led the House of Commons up to the actual breaking out of the war.

[The Remonstrance was put to the vote in the House of Commons, and was carried by 159 votes to 148,—a majority of *eleven*.]

5. Mr. Peard then moved that the Declaration might be printed, which was opposed with the greatest warmth and vehemence by Hyde<sup>2</sup> and Culpeper; Hyde again giving utterance to the extraordinary opinion he had ventured to express in the debate, that the House of Commons had no right to print without the Lords' 'concurrence. Therefore, he added, if the motion were persisted in, he should ask

the leave of the House to have liberty to enter his protest.

6. Culpeper's speech in the same strain, replying to the determined objection made upon this, first very calmly by Pym,<sup>3</sup> and then more excitedly by Denzil Hollis,<sup>4</sup> carried the excitement still higher; and in the midst of it were now heard several voices, and among them very conspicuously that of Palmer,<sup>5</sup> crying out that they also protested. Some one then rose and moved that the names of the protesters might be taken. At these words the excitement broke out afresh; and loud cries of "All! all!" burst from every side where any of Hyde's party sat.

7. The word "All" had fallen like a lighted match upon gunpowder. It was taken up and passed from mouth to mouth, with an exasperation bordering on frenzy: and to those who in after years recalled the scene, under that sudden glare of excitement after a sitting of fifteen hours;—the worn-out, weary assemblage; the ill-lighted, dreary chamber; the hour sounding one after midnight; confused loud cries on every side breaking forth unexpectedly, and startling gestures of violence accompanying them,—it presented itself to the memory as a very Valley of the Shadow of Death.

8. The sagacity and great calmness of Mr. Hampden,<sup>6</sup> by a short speech, prevented more serious consequences. It is not perhaps difficult to imagine, from what D'Ewes<sup>7</sup> says of the short but memorable speech, with what exquisite tact and self-control this profound master of debate calmed down the passions of that dangerous hour. He saw at once that the motion for printing could not then with safety be persisted in; and reminding the House that there might be many who, having supported the Remonstrance, might yet be opposed to the printing of it, he asked how any one could so far know the minds of such as to presume to enter a protest for them.

9. "Some who were against the printing of the Re-

monstrance," says D'Ewes, "yet disavowed Mr. Palmer's desiring to have a protestation entered in their names; and Mr. Hampden demanded of him how he could know other men's minds? To whom Mr. Palmer answered, having leave of the House to speak, that, having once before heard the cry, 'All! all!' he had thereupon desired to have the said protestation entered in all their names."

10. The mere question and answer had quelled the unnatural excitement, and brought the House again, as Hampden anticipated, within government and rule. Agreement was then come to, that the question as to the printing of the Declaration should for the present be left undetermined, with the understanding that it was not to be printed without special leave. Hyde's party would further have restricted this order, by introducing the word "published" into it; but Pym, refusing to consent to that addition, divided the House once more, and carried the original proposal, "That this Declaration shall not be printed without the particular order of the House," by a majority of twenty-three, thus leaving the publication free, and restraining the printing only until further order. And so, says D'Ewes, "the House arose just when the clock struck two the ensuing morning."

11. In the rush to the door after their weary sitting of eighteen hours, Falkland<sup>8</sup> and Cromwell<sup>9</sup> passed out together; and Hyde afterwards reported, on the relation of his friend, that even the member for Cambridge, usually so "tempestuous" in behaviour, showed no exultation at the victory his party had gained. Not as of a triumph won, but as of a danger narrowly escaped, was Cromwell's reference to the vote which had closed this momentous debate. If it had gone against them in that vote, he said, he and many other honest men he knew would have sold all they had this very morning, and never have seen England more. And though the speaker is not, perhaps,

likely in express terms to have said this, any more than to have acted in any such fashion, the anecdote doubtless represents what 'substantially was not untrue. The turning-point of freedom or despotism for two more centuries in England was probably passed that night.

JOHN FORSTER: *History of the Grand Remonstrance.*

ac-ces-si-ble, easily reached.  
an-ti-ci-pat-ed, expected; foresaw.  
au-then-tic, genuine; trustworthy.  
chal-lenged, called in question.  
con-cur-rence, agreement.  
de-mon-strates, shows; proves.  
dis-a-vowed', disclaimed.  
ex-as-per-a-tion, rage.  
ex-qui-site, fine; delicate.

gar-bled, falsified by picking out certain parts only.  
in-trigues', plots.  
par-ti-sans, adherents.  
pha-lanx, compact body.  
priv-i-leg-es, rights.  
re-me-di-a-ble, able to be cured.  
sub-stan-tial-ly, in effect; really.  
un-scru-pu-lous, unprincipled.

<sup>1</sup> The Long Parliament met in November 1640, and was not dissolved till March 1660; it thus lasted nineteen years and four months.

<sup>2</sup> Hyde, Edward, afterwards Earl of Clarendon. He was the King's chief adviser, after the removal of Laud and Strafford. After the Restoration (1660) he was made Lord Chancellor by Charles II. He was banished in 1667, and died at Rouen in 1674. His daughter was married to James II.

<sup>3</sup> Pym, John, a great parliamentary leader; member for Tavistock. His influence with the House of Commons was so great that he was called "King Pym." He was a lawyer, and he led the impeachment of the Duke of Buckingham in 1626, and of Strafford in 1640. He died in 1643.

<sup>4</sup> Denzil Hollis, a prominent member of the House of Commons, on the popular side. In the Parliament of 1629, he and another member held the speaker in the chair till a resolution was passed against the King's arbitrary proceedings. For this he was imprisoned during the King's pleasure. He was one of the five members of the Long Parliament whom Charles I. tried to arrest (1642). He did not concur in the extreme measures of Cromwell; and after the Restoration he was made a peer. To the end of his life he was a zealous friend to liberty: died 1680.

<sup>5</sup> Palmer, Geoffrey, a lawyer of the Middle Temple.

<sup>6</sup> Hampden, John, one of the greatest of English patriots. In 1636 he refused to pay ship-money, and was tried in the Court of Exchequer. The decision was against him; but he was the more popular on that account, and in 1641 the decision was reversed by the Long Parliament. He also was one of the five members whom Charles tried to arrest. He was killed on Chalgrove Field in 1643.

<sup>7</sup> D'Ewes, Sir Symonds; member for Sudbury in the Long Parliament. He was a lawyer and an antiquary. His MS. "Diary of the Long Parliament" preserved in the Harleian Collection in the British Museum, the work quoted above, is a most valuable historical document. He died in 1650.

<sup>8</sup> Falkland, Lucius Carey, Viscount, one of the most devoted and noble of the King's supporters. Like Hyde, he at first sided with the popular party; and, also like Hyde, he supported the impeachment of Strafford. When the Grand Remonstrance was produced, Hyde and Falkland for the first time took the King's side. Falkland was killed in the battle of Newbury in 1643.

<sup>9</sup> Cromwell, Oliver, then member for Cambridgeshire, afterwards the great Lord Protector of England.

## 8.—DISMISSAL OF THE RUMP.

1653 A.D.

[What remained of the Long Parliament after Pride's Purge in 1648 was called "the Rump, or Fag-end of it." This was not finally dissolved till 1660; but Cromwell, under pressure from the Army, dismissed its members on April 20, 1653. A meeting had been held at Whitehall on the previous day to consider the point, but no decision had been come to, "except the engagement to meet here again to-morrow morning."]

WEDNESDAY, April 20.

1. My Lord General accordingly is in his reception-room this morning, "in plain black clothes and gray worsted stockings;" he, with many Officers: but few Members have yet come, though 'punctual Bulstrode and certain others are there. Some waiting there is; some impatience that the Members would come. The Members do not come: instead of Members, comes a notice that they are busy getting on with their Bill in the House, hurrying it double-quick through all the stages. Possible? New message, that it will be Law in a little while, if no interposition take place! Bulstrode hastens off to the House: my Lord General, at first 'incredulous, does now also hasten off,—nay, orders that a Company of Musketeers of his own regiment attend him. Hastens off, with a very high expression of countenance, I think;—saying or feeling: Who would have believed it of them? "It is not honest; yea, it is contrary to common honesty!"—My Lord General, the big hour is come!

2. Young Colonel Sidney,<sup>1</sup> the celebrated Algernon, sat in the House this morning; a House of some Fifty-three. Algernon has left distinct note of the affair; less distinct we have from Bulstrode, who was also there, who seems in some points to be even wilfully wrong. Solid Ludlow<sup>2</sup> was far off in Ireland, but gathered many details in after-years, and faithfully wrote them down, in the 'unappeasable' indignation of his heart. Combining these three originals, we have, after various perusals and 'collations and con-

siderations, obtained the following authentic, moderately conceivable account :—

3. The Parliament sitting as usual, and being in debate upon the Bill with the amendments, which it was thought would have been passed that day, the Lord General Cromwell came into the House, clad in plain black clothes and gray worsted stockings, and sat down, as he used to do, in an ordinary place. For some time he listens to this interesting debate on the Bill ; beckoning once to Harrison, who came over to him, and answered 'dubitably'. Whereupon the Lord General sat still for about a quarter of an hour longer. But now the question being to be put, That this Bill do now pass, he beckons again to Harrison, says, "This is the time ; I must do it!"—and so rose up, put off his hat and spake.

4. At the first, and for a good while, he spake to the 'commendation of the Parliament for their pains and care of the public good ; but afterwards he changed his style, told them of their injustice, delays of justice, self-interest, and other faults, rising higher and higher, into a very aggravated style indeed. An honourable Member, Sir Peter Wentworth by name, not known to my readers, and by me better known than trusted, rises to order, as we phrase it ; says, "It is a strange language this ; unusual within the walls of Parliament this ! And from a trusted servant too ; and one whom we have so highly honoured ; and one—"

5. "Come, come !" exclaims my Lord General in a very high key, "we have had enough of this,"—and in fact my Lord General now blazing all up into clear 'conflagration, exclaims, "I will put an end to your prating," and steps forth into the floor of the House, and "clapping on his hat," and occasionally "stamping the floor with his feet," begins a discourse which no man can report ! He says—*Heavens !* he is heard saying : "It is not fit that



you should sit here any longer!" You have sat too long here for any good you have been doing lately. "You shall now give place to better men!—Call them in!" adds he briefly, to Harrison, in word of command; and "some twenty or thirty" grim musketeers enter, with bullets in their 'snaphances; grimly prompt for orders; and stand in some attitude of Carry-arms there. Veteran men: men of might and men of war, their faces are as the faces of lions, and their feet are swift as the roes upon the mountains;—not beautiful to honourable gentlemen at this moment!

6. "You call yourselves a Parliament," continues my Lord General in clear blaze of conflagration: "You are no Parliament; I say you are no Parliament! Some of you are drunkards," and his eye flashes on poor Mr. Chaloner, an official man of some value, addicted to the bottle; "some of you are—," and he glares into Harry Marten, and the poor Sir Peter who rose to order, lewd livers both; "living in open contempt of God's Commandments. Following your own greedy appetites, and the Devil's Commandments. Corrupt unjust persons," and here I think he glanced "at Sir Bulstrode Whitlocke, one of the Commissioners of the Great Seal, giving him and others very sharp language, though he named them not:" "Corrupt unjust persons; 'scandalous to the profession of the Gospel: how can you be a Parliament for God's People? Depart, I say; and let us have done with you. In the name of God,—go!"

7. The House is of course all on its feet,—uncertain almost whether not on its head: such a scene as was never seen before in any House of Commons. History reports with a shudder that my Lord General, lifting the sacred Mace itself, said, "What shall we do with this 'bauble? Take it away!" and gave it to a musketeer. And now,—*"Fetch him down!"* says he to Harrison, flashing on the

Speaker. Speaker Lenthall,<sup>3</sup> more an ancient Roman than anything else, declares, He will not come till forced. "Sir," said Harrison, "I will lend you a hand;" on which Speaker Lenthall came down, and gloomily vanished. They all vanished; flooding gloomily, 'clamorously out, to their 'ulterior businesses and respective places of abode: the Long Parliament is dissolved!<sup>4</sup>

8. "It's you that have forced me to this," exclaims my Lord General: "I have sought the Lord night and day, that he would rather slay me than put me upon the doing of this work." At their going out, some say the Lord General said to young Sir Harry Vane, calling him by his name, "That *he* might have prevented this; but that he was a juggler, and had not common honesty." "Oh, Sir Harry Vane,<sup>5</sup> thou with thy subtle 'casuistries and abstruse 'hair-splittings, thou art other than a good one, I think! The Lord deliver me from thee, Sir Harry Vane!" All being gone out, the door of the House was locked, and the Key with the Mace, as I heard, was carried away by Colonel Otley—and it is all over, and the unspeakable Catastrophe has come, and remains.

9. Such was the destructive wrath of my Lord General Cromwell against the Nominal Rump Parliament of England. Wrath which innumerable mortals since have accounted extremely 'diabolic; which some now begin to account partly divine. Divine or diabolic, it is an indisputable fact; left for the commentaries of men. The Rump Parliament has gone its ways;—and truly, except it be in their own, I know not in what eyes are tears at their departure. They went very softly, softly as a Dream, say all witnesses. "We did not hear a dog bark at their going!" asserts my Lord General elsewhere.

10. It is said, my Lord General did not, on his entrance *into the House*, contemplate quite as a certainty this

strong measure ; but it came upon him like an irresistible impulse, or inspiration, as he heard their Parliamentary eloquence proceed. "Perceiving the spirit of God so strong upon me, I would no longer consult flesh and blood." He has done it, at all events ; and is responsible for the results it may have. A responsibility which he, as well as most of us, knows to be awful : but he fancies it was in answer to the English Nation and to the Maker of the English Nation and of him ; and he will do the best he may with it.

THOMAS CARLYLE : *Oliver Cromwell's Letters and Speeches.*

ban'ble, play-thing ; gewgaw.  
cas-u-is-tries, tricks of reasoning.  
clam'or-ous-ly, noisily.  
col-la-tions, comparing of documents.  
com-men-da-tion, praise.  
con-fla-gra-tion, flame ; fire.  
di-a-bol-ic, devilish.  
du-bi-tat-ing-ly, with hesitation.  
hair-split-tings, fine-drawn distinctions.

im-pulse, influence.  
in-cred-u-lous, doubting ; not inclined to believe.  
in-dig-na-tion, wrath, anger.  
punc-tu-al, prompt as to time.  
scan-dal-ous, disgraceful.  
snap-han-ces, firelocks.  
ul-te-ri-or, further.  
un-ap-peas-a-ble, unable to be pacified.

<sup>1</sup> Sid'ney, Algernon, a colonel in the Parliamentary army, and one of the King's judges, but was not present when Charles was sentenced. Having gone abroad at the Restoration, he returned in 1667, on obtaining a pardon. In 1683 he was tried for being concerned in the Rye House Plot, and was condemned and executed.

<sup>2</sup> Lud'low, Edmund, one of the most extreme of the Parliament men. He joined with Ireton in 1648 in demanding the blood of the King, and counselled Pride's Purge of the Parliament. He was one of the King's judges, and approved of his condemnation. In 1650 he went to Ireland as commander-in-chief there. He protested against Cromwell's elevation to the Protectorship. Carlyle says, of his sterling

honesty, that he was "firm as brass or oak timber." He died in Switzerland in 1693.

<sup>3</sup> Speaker Lenth'all, William Lenthall, a lawyer, member for Woodstock, and Speaker of the Long Parliament, and afterwards of the Rump : died 1662.

<sup>4</sup> "Is dissolved," rather, "Is dismissed." The Long Parliament assembled again in 1660, and dissolved itself.

<sup>5</sup> Sir Harry Vane, son of Sir Henry Vane, Secretary of State to Charles I. In the Civil War he sided with the Parliament, but he opposed the elevation of Cromwell. After the Restoration he was tried on a charge of high treason, and was condemned and beheaded (1662).

## 9.—WHAT ENGLAND GAINED BY THE REVOLUTION.

1688 A.D.

[The Revolution of 1688 consisted in a change of dynasty, and was accomplished without a civil war, and indeed without any bloodshed. Leading men of all parties were agreed that the arbitrary proceedings of James II. had become intolerable. They therefore invited William, Prince of Orange, who was married to Mary, daughter of James II., to come and occupy the throne. William and Mary came. James fled. The throne was declared vacant. The Declaration of Right was drawn up, and William and Mary were proclaimed King and Queen, February 13, 1689. The most important reforms which England owes to the Revolution are said by Lord Macaulay to have been, the Toleration Act, the establishment of Presbyterianism in Scotland, the alteration in the mode of granting the supplies, and the purification of justice. Of the last, the historian writes as follows.]

1. The next great blessing which we owe to the Revolution is the 'purification of the administration of justice in political cases. Of the importance of this change no person can judge who is not well acquainted with the earlier volumes of the State Trials. Those volumes are, we do not hesitate to say, the most frightful record of baseness and 'depravity that is extant in the world. Our hatred is altogether turned away from the crimes and the criminals, and directed against the law and its ministers. We see 'villanies as black as ever were imputed to any prisoner at any bar daily committed on the bench and in the jury-box.

2. The worst of the bad acts which brought discredit on the old parliaments of France,—the condemnation of Lally,<sup>1</sup> for example, or even that of Calas,<sup>2</sup>—may seem praiseworthy when compared with the 'atrocities which follow each other in endless succession as we turn over that huge chronicle of the shame of England. The magistrates of Paris and Toulouse were blinded by prejudice, passion, or bigotry. But the abandoned judges of our own country committed murder with their eyes open. The cause of this is plain. In France there was no constitutional opposition. If a man held language offensive to the govern-

ment, he was at once sent to the Bastille<sup>3</sup> or to Vincennes.<sup>4</sup> But in England, at least after the days of the Long Parliament, the king could not, by a mere act of his prerogative, rid himself of a troublesome politician. He was forced to remove those who thwarted him by means of perjured witnesses, packed juries, and corrupt, hard-hearted, brow-beating judges.

3. The Opposition naturally 'retaliated whenever they had the upper hand. Every time that the power passed from one party to the other there was a 'proscription and a massacre, thinly disguised under the forms of judicial procedure. The tribunals ought to be sacred places of refuge, where, in all the 'vicissitudes of public affairs, the innocent of all parties may find shelter. They were, before the Revolution, our unclean public 'shambles, to which each party in its turn dragged its opponents, and where each found the same 'venal and ferocious butchers waiting for its custom. Papist or Protestant, Tory or Whig, priest or alderman—all was one to those greedy and savage natures, provided only there was money to earn and blood to shed.

4. Of course these worthless judges soon created around them, as was natural, a breed of informers more wicked, if possible, than themselves. The trial by jury afforded little or no protection to the innocent. The juries were nominated by the sheriffs; the sheriffs were in most parts of England nominated by the crown.

5. In London, the great scene of political contention, those officers were chosen by the people. The fiercest parliamentary election of our time will give but a faint notion of the storm which raged in the city on the day when two 'infuriated parties, each bearing its badge, met to select the men in whose hands were to be the issues of life and death for the coming year. On that day nobles of the highest descent did not think it beneath them to canvass and marshal the livery,<sup>5</sup> to head the procession, and to

watch the poll. On that day the great chiefs of parties waited in an agony of suspense for the messenger who was to bring from Guildhall the news whether their lives and estates were for the next twelve months to be at the mercy of a friend or of a foe.

6. In 1681 Whig sheriffs were chosen; and Shaftesbury<sup>6</sup> defied the whole power of the government. In 1682 the sheriffs were Tories. Shaftesbury fled to Holland. The other chiefs of the party broke up their councils and retired in haste to their country seats. Sidney, on the scaffold, told those sheriffs that his blood was on their heads. Neither of them could deny the charge, and one of them wept with shame and remorse.

7. Thus every man who then meddled with public affairs took his life in his hand. The consequence was, that men of gentle natures stood aloof from contests in which they could not engage without hazarding their own necks and the fortunes of their children. This was the course adopted by Sir William Temple,<sup>7</sup> by Evelyn,<sup>8</sup> and by many other men who were in every respect admirably qualified to serve the State. On the other hand, those resolute and enterprising men who put their heads and lands to hazard in the game of politics, naturally acquired from the habit of playing for so deep a stake a reckless and desperate turn of mind. It was, we seriously believe, as safe to be a highwayman as to be a distinguished leader of Opposition.

8. This may serve to explain, and in some degree to excuse, the violence with which the factions of that age are justly 'reproached. They were fighting, not merely for office, but for life. If they reposed for a moment from the work of agitation, if they suffered the public excitement to flag, they were lost men.

9. Hume, in describing this state of things, has employed *an image which seems hardly to suit the general simplicity*

of his style, but which is by no means too strong for the occasion. "Thus," says he, "the two parties, 'actuated by mutual rage, but cooped up within the narrow limits of the law, levelled with poisoned daggers the most deadly blows against each other's breast, and buried in their factious divisions all regard to truth, honour, and humanity.'"

10. From this terrible evil the Revolution set us free. The law which secured to the judges their seats during life or good behaviour did something. The law 'subsequently passed for regulating trials in cases of treason did much more. The provisions of that law show, indeed, very little legislative skill. It is not framed on the principle of securing the innocent, but on the principle of giving a great chance of escape to the accused, whether innocent or guilty. This, however, is decidedly a fault on the right side. The evil produced by the occasional escape of a bad citizen is not to be compared with the evils of that Reign of Terror, for such it was, which preceded the Revolution. Since the passing of this law, scarcely one single person has suffered death in England as a traitor, who had not been convicted on overwhelming evidence, to the satisfaction of all parties, of the highest crime against the State.

11. Attempts have been made, in times of great excitement, to bring in persons guilty of high treason for acts which, though sometimes highly 'blamable, did not necessarily imply a design falling within the legal definition of treason. All those attempts have failed. During a hundred and forty years no statesman, while engaged in constitutional opposition to a government, has had the axe before his eyes. The smallest minorities struggling against the most powerful majorities in the most agitated times have felt themselves perfectly secure. Pulteney<sup>9</sup> and Fox<sup>10</sup> were the two most distinguished leaders of Opposition since the Revolution. Both were personally 'obnoxious to the court. But the utmost harm that the utmost anger of the

court could do to them was to strike off the "Right Honourable" from before their names.

LORD MACAULAY: *History of England.*

ac-tu-ät-ed, stirred; moved.  
a-trog-i-ties, cruelties.  
bläm-a-ble, deserving of blame.  
de-prav-i-ty, wickedness.  
in-fu-ri-ät-ed, enraged.  
ob-nox-i-ous, offensive; hateful.  
pro-scrip-tion, publication of names  
of condemned persons.

pu-ri-fi-ca-tion, act of making pure.  
re-proached', charged; blamed.  
re-tal-i-ät-ed, returned the evil.  
sham-ble, slaughter-houses.  
sub-se-quent-ly, afterwards.  
ve-nal, hireling.  
vi-cis-si-tudes, changes.  
vil-lan-ies, crimes.

<sup>1</sup> Lal'ly, Thomas Arthur, Count de, a distinguished French general (of Irish extraction), who was forced to surrender Pondicherry (in India) to the English. To appease popular clamour, he was condemned and beheaded on a false charge of treason, 1766.

<sup>2</sup> Ca'lais, John, a Protestant merchant of Toulouse. His son, who had turned Roman Catholic, hanged himself in a fit of melancholy. The father was accused of having strangled him, was tortured to make him confess, and was finally put to death, 1762.

<sup>3</sup> Bastille', the castle of Paris, built in 1369-88, and used chiefly as a state prison till its destruction by the populace in the Revolution of 1789.

<sup>4</sup> Vincennes', a strong castle and residence of the French kings near Paris.

<sup>5</sup> The livery, the name given to the companies, or corporate societies, of the city of London. The name originated in the peculiar colour and form of dress formerly worn by the members of each company on public occasions.

<sup>6</sup> Shaftesbury, Anthony Ashley Cooper, first Earl of. During the Civil War he had taken the popular side, and was a member of the Barebones Parliament. As Sir Anthony Cooper, he

afterwards aided Monk in bringing about the Restoration. He became a member of the Cabal Ministry, was made an Earl in 1672, and became Lord Chancellor. He was the author of the famous Habeas Corpus Act in 1679. He intrigued with the Duke of Monmouth against the Duke of York, and was cast into the Tower in 1681. He died in Holland in 1683.

<sup>7</sup> Sir William Temple, eminent as a diplomatist in the time of Charles II. and James II. He retired from public affairs in 1680, and died in 1699.

<sup>8</sup> Evelyn, John, an English author, who took some part in bringing about the Restoration. He wrote on copper-engraving, on forest trees, and on medals, and his "Memoirs" are a great store of information regarding the social history of his time.

<sup>9</sup> Pulteney, William, Earl of Bath. He was the bitter opponent of Sir Robert Walpole, whom he succeeded in driving from power in 1742 (reign of George II.).

<sup>10</sup> Fox, Charles James, the leader of the opposition to Pitt, who was Prime Minister from 1783 till 1801, and again from 1804 till his death in 1806. Fox died a few months after his great rival.

## 10.—THE BLACK HOLE OF CALCUTTA.

1756 A.D.

[The terrible disaster described in the following passage led to the conquest of Bengal by England. For trading purposes, the English had established a settle-



ment at Fort William, near Calcutta, in 1698. Surajah Dowlah (properly Sujah-ud-Dowlah) the Nabob of Bengal, attacked and captured Fort William with an army of 70,000 men in June 1756. It was then that he thrust his prisoners into the Black Hole. To avenge this cruelty and insult, Robert Clive sailed from Madras with a small but determined army. He landed at one of the mouths of the Ganges in December, and on January 2nd he gained over Surajah Dowlah the great victory of Plassey, which shattered the power of the Nabob and laid the foundation of the English Empire in India.]

1. From a child Surajah Dowlah had hated the English. It was his whim to do so; and his whims were never opposed. He had also formed a very 'exaggerated notion of the wealth which might be obtained by plundering them; and his feeble and uncultivated mind was incapable of perceiving that the riches of Calcutta, had they been even greater than he imagined, would not 'compensate him for what he must lose, if the European trade, of which Bengal was a chief seat, should be driven by his violence to some other quarter.

2. Pretexts for a quarrel were readily found. The English, in expectation of a war with France, had begun to fortify their settlement without special 'permission from the Nabob. A rich native, whom he longed to plunder, had taken refuge at Calcutta, and had not been delivered up. On such grounds as these Surajah Dowlah marched with a great army against Fort William.

3. The servants of the Company at Madras had been forced by Dupleix<sup>1</sup> to become statesmen and soldiers. Those in Bengal were still mere traders, and were terrified and 'bewildered by the approaching danger. The



governor, who had heard much of Surajah Dowlah's cruelty, was frightened out of his wits, jumped into a boat, and took refuge in the nearest ship. The military commandant thought that he could not do better than follow so good an example.

4. The fort was taken after a feeble resistance; and great numbers of the English fell into the hands of the conquerors. The Nabob seated himself with regal pomp in the principal hall of the factory, and ordered Mr. Holwell, the first in rank among the prisoners, to be brought before him. His Highness talked about the insolence of the English, and grumbled at the smallness of the treasure which he had found; but promised to spare their lives, and retired to rest.

5. Then was committed that great crime, memorable for its singular atrocity, memorable for the tremendous retribution by which it was followed. The English captives were left at the mercy of the guards, and the guards determined to secure them for the night in the prison of the garrison, a chamber known by the fearful name of the Black Hole. Even for a single European malefactor, that dungeon would, in such a climate, have been too close and narrow. The space was only twenty feet square. The air-holes were small and obstructed. It was the summer solstice, the season when the fierce heat of Bengal can scarcely be rendered tolerable to natives of England by lofty halls and by the constant waving of fans.

6. The number of the prisoners was one hundred and forty-six. When they were ordered to enter the cell, they imagined that the soldiers were joking; and, being in high spirits on account of the promise of the Nabob to spare their lives, they laughed and jested at the absurdity of the notion. They soon discovered their mistake. They expostulated; they entreated; but in vain. The guards threatened to cut down all who hesitated. The captives

were driven into the cell at the point of the sword, and the door was instantly shut and locked upon them.

7. Nothing in history or in fiction, not even the story which Ugolino<sup>2</sup> told in the sea of everlasting ice, after he had wiped his bloody lips on the scalp of his murderer, approaches the horrors which were recounted by the few survivors of that night. They cried for mercy. They strove to burst the door. Holwell, who, even in that extremity, retained some presence of mind, offered large bribes to the jailers. But the answer was, that nothing could be done without the Nabob's orders, that the Nabob was asleep, and that he would be angry if anybody woke him.

8. Then the prisoners went mad with despair. They trampled each other down, fought for the places at the windows, fought for the pittance of water with which the cruel mercy of the murderers mocked their agonies, raved, prayed, blasphemed, implored the guards to fire among them. The jailers in the meantime held lights to the bars, and shouted with laughter at the frantic struggles of their victims. At length the tumult died away in low gaspings and moanings.

9. The day broke. The Nabob had slept off his debauch, and permitted the door to be opened. But it was some time before the soldiers could make a lane for the survivors, by piling up on each side the heaps of corpses on which the burning climate had already begun to do its loathsome work. When at length a passage was made, twenty-three ghastly figures, such as their own mothers would not have known, staggered one by one out of the charnel-house. A pit was instantly dug. The dead bodies, a hundred and twenty-three in number, were flung into it promiscuously, and covered up.

10. But these things, which, after the lapse of more than eighty years, cannot be told or read without horror, awakened neither remorse nor pity in the bosom of the

savage Nabob. He inflicted no punishment on the murderers. He showed no tenderness to the survivors. Some of them, indeed, from whom nothing was to be got, were suffered to depart; but those from whom it was thought that anything could be extorted were treated with execrable cruelty.

11. Holwell, unable to walk, was carried before the tyrant, who reproached him, threatened him, and sent him up the country in irons, together with some other gentlemen who were suspected of knowing more than they chose to tell about the treasures of the Company. These persons, still bowed down by the sufferings of that great agony, were lodged in miserable sheds, and fed only with grain and water, till at length the intercessions of the female relations of the Nabob procured their release.

LORD MACAULAY: *Essay on Lord Clive.*

a-troc'i-ty, fierce cruelty.  
be-wil'-dered, confused; perplexed.  
blas-phemed', swore profanely.  
char-nel-house, house where dead  
bodies are kept.  
com-pen-sate, make up to.  
ex-ag-ger-ät-ed, much too high.  
ex-e-cra-ble, detestable.  
ex-pos-tu-lät-ed, reasoned; remon-  
strated.  
ex-tort-ed, wrested; wrung.

in-so-lence, rudeness; impudence.  
in-ter-ces-sions, prayers; entreaties.  
loath-some, disgusting.  
mal-e-fac-tor, ill-doer; criminal.  
ob-struct'-ed, stopped up.  
per-mis-sion, leave.  
pro-mis-cu-ous-ly, without order or  
distinction.  
re-sist-ance, opposition.  
ret-ri-bu-tion, punishment.  
sur-viv'-ors, persons that outlived.

<sup>1</sup> Dupleix', Joseph, the chief of the French adventurers in India, and the most formidable rival of the English there. He was originally a merchant, and in 1731 he went to Chandernagore as director of the colony. He forced the servants of the East India Company "to become statesmen and soldiers" by

his aggressive policy and by his intrigues with the native princes. Thus Lord Clive, who went out to India as a clerk in the Company's service, quitted his desk in 1747, and became a great general and administrator.

<sup>2</sup> Ugol'i'no.—This story is in the *Inferno* of the Italian poet Dante.

## 11.—THE HEIGHTS OF ABRAHAM.

1759 A.D.

[The Heights of Abraham are outside of Quebec, in Canada. The battle fought there in 1759 between the French and the English occurred in the course

of the Seven Years' War (1756-63), in which England and Prussia were combined against France, Austria, Russia, and other states. The specific cause of the war in America was the attempt made by the French to cut off the English from the far-trade with the Indians, by a chain of forts from the Lakes to the Mississippi. The expedition against Quebec was commanded by General Wolfe, a young officer specially selected by Pitt on account of his ability. The plan of the campaign was, that two armies from the south (under Generals Amherst and Johnson) should join Wolfe before Quebec. After waiting for them in vain, Wolfe attacked the French camp at the Montmorency on July 31st; but he was repulsed with considerable loss.]

1. The disaster at the Montmorency<sup>1</sup> broke down the health of Wolfe.<sup>2</sup> His eager and ambitious spirit was housed in a 'sensitive, frail body. For days he lay in burning fever on his bed. He knew that his country expected much from him. He had been specially chosen by Pitt to command, in the expectation that no danger or difficulty would daunt him. As he tossed restlessly about, the burden of his 'unaccomplished task oppressed him sorely. As if in sympathy with their beloved general, sickness broke out in the army. For a time the gloom of discouragement rested upon it.

2. When the fever began to leave him, Wolfe wrote to his generals requiring them to consult over future operations. The obstacles to a successful attack by the Beauport shore were too great. Another plan, suggested, it is said, by General Townsend, was adopted; but it was kept a 'profound secret. Health returned to the army amid the bustle of preparation. At the end of August, Wolfe, now recovered, withdrew from his camp on the left bank of the Montmorency, and 'concentrated his forces at Point Levi.

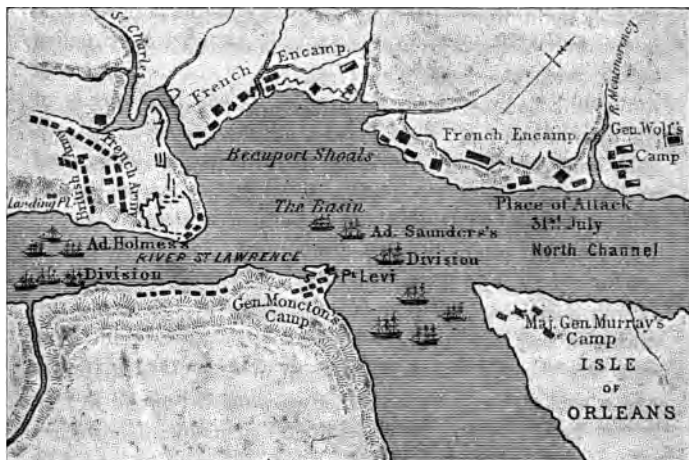
3. On the 12th of September his batteries opened on Quebec; and Admiral Saunders anchored some of his great ships within firing range of the Beauport shore. Montcalm<sup>3</sup> could see the British sailors and marines entering the boats, and he stood ready to repel another attack on his intrenchments. His army was now somewhat diminished in numbers. A 'multi-

Sept. 12,  
1759  
A. D.

nous spirit breaking out among the militia, he hanged some "to encourage the others:" many he had been compelled to send away to gather in the harvest. The reports of the capture of Fort Niagara<sup>4</sup> and of the movements of Amherst from Crown Point<sup>5</sup> had disquieted him. M. de Levi was then at Montreal with a large force; and Bouganville, with 1,500 men, watched, above Cap Rouge, the movements of Admiral Holmes and his fleet.

4. While the cannon were thundering over the Beauport shore, the English army marched by the southern bank of the St. Lawrence eight miles above Quebec, to where the fleet was stationed. Thrilled with the expectation of a great action, and silently, the soldiers of the first division stepped into the boats. Wolfe was in the fore-sept. 14. most. The night was starry and still. As the flotilla dropped softly down the tide, he relieved his excitement by reciting Gray's Elegy;<sup>6</sup> adding, when he had finished, "Now, gentlemen, I would rather have been the author of that poem than take Quebec." He was soon to prove how true it is that "the paths of glory lead but to the grave."

5. On the beach of a cove, three miles above the city, Wolfe and the officers with him leaped. Fast as the boats arrived the soldiers landed and formed in rank. All night the boats passed between the cove and the fleet, which had now dropped down opposite it, bringing over the other divisions. A narrow path, hidden by the 'boscage, ran 'tortuously from the beach up the face of the 'precipitous rock. Swinging themselves up by the branches, holding on by tufts of grass, the 'agile Highlanders clambered to the top, and captured a French guard. Wolfe and his whole army followed. When the gray dawn turned to a burning red streaked with glittering golden bars, 4,828 British soldiers were falling into order of battle on the *billowy and bouldered Plains of Abraham.*



6. From the city an officer rode swiftly to Montcalm with the startling intelligence that Quebec was threatened on the south-west. Obeying only the impulse of his 'chivalrous spirit, he resolved to give battle to Sept. 15. the daring foe. Loudly the 'reveillé rang out, and roused his soldiers from their slumbers. Fast they were hurried over the bridge of boats across the St. Charles, and were formed for battle on a slope on the north-west of the fortress. In his 'precipitation Montcalm threw away the advantage that a superior 'artillery would have given him. He had only two light field-pieces; but his foe had only one. He mustered 7,520 men under arms; but hardly half of them were proved soldiers. Wolfe had none but veterans under his command. But his position was perilous: while a superior force faced him, Bougainville was advancing from Cap Rouge to attack him in the rear.

7. The French advanced with great show and bravery. Strong parties of their skirmishers drove in upon the





10. On the first alarm of the utter rout of the French army, M. de Vaudreuil abandoned the line of fortifications on the east, and fled with the militia. On the 18th of September, the French governor of Quebec received instructions from M. de Levi and M. de Vaudreuil to hold out to the last extremity, as they were preparing to march to his relief. But it was too late—on that day the British army entered the capital of Canada. After an existence of one hundred and fifty years, the city of Champlain<sup>7</sup> passed away from the protection of France, and the British standard was unfurled from the Castle of St. Louis. Under the new rule the inhabitants remained in secure possession of their property and in the free exercise of their religion.

ANDREW ARCHER: *A History of Canada*

ag-ile, nimble; active.

ar-til'-ler-y, service of guns.

bos'-age, underwood.

chiv'-al-rous, heroic.

con-can-trat-ed, gathered together.

coun-selled, advised.

ex-pec-ta-tion, hope; prospect.

ir-re-triev-a-ble, incapable of being stopped; hopeless.

mu-ti-nous, rebellious.

pre-cip-i-ta-tion, headlong haste.

pre-cip-i-tous, steep.

pro-found', deep; hidden.

re-lieved', lightened; eased.

re-veill-é (*ray-vel'-yay*), beat of drum.

sen-si-tive, delicate; easily affected.

sim-ul-ta-ne-ous, happening at the same time.

tor-tu-ous-ly, crookedly.

un-ac-com-plished, unfinished.

<sup>1</sup> The Montmorency, a river, with falls, flowing into the St. Lawrence below Quebec. (See plan.)

<sup>2</sup> Wolfe, James, born in Kent in 1726. He had been greatly instrumental in the taking of Louisburg on Cape Breton Island, in 1758.

<sup>3</sup> Montcalm', Louis Joseph, Marquis de, the French commander in Canada; born 1712.

<sup>4</sup> Fort Niagara, at the junction of

the River Niagara with Lake Ontario, on the eastern or States' side.

<sup>5</sup> Crown Point, a fort on the west bank of the strait connecting Lake George with Lake Champlain.

<sup>6</sup> Gray's Elegy.—"Elegy Written in a Country Churchyard," by Thomas Gray; 1716-1771.

<sup>7</sup> Champlain', Samuel de, a French naval officer, and one of the earliest explorers of Canada: died 1635.

## 12.—CHARACTER OF JAMES WATT.

[James Watt was born at Greenock in 1736. He attended school, but his progress was due mainly to his home studies. After having spent some years as apprentice to scientific instrument makers in Glasgow and London, he became

mathematical instrument maker to Glasgow University in 1757. His receiving one of Newcomen's steam-engines to repair led him to study the principles and structure of the mechanism. After many experiments, he introduced numerous improvements, especially the separate condenser, which really made his steam-engine a new invention. He gave up his shop in 1769, and became a civil engineer. In 1773 he became a manufacturer of engines, retired from business in 1800, and after a comfortable and peaceful old age, died in 1819.]

1. Watt has been called the great *Improver* of the steam-engine; but in truth, as to all that is admirable in its 'structure or vast in its utility, he should rather be described as its *Inventor*. It was by his inventions that its action was so 'regulated as to make it capable of being applied to the finest and most delicate manufactures, and its power so increased as to set weight and solidity at defiance. By his admirable 'contrivance, it has become a thing 'stupendous alike for its force and its flexibility—for the prodigious power which it can exert, and the ease and precision and 'ductility with which that power can be varied, distributed, and applied. The trunk of an elephant, that can pick up a pin or rend an oak, is as nothing to it. It can engrave a seal, and crush masses of 'obdurate metal before it; draw out, without breaking, a thread as fine as gossamer, and lift a ship of war like a bauble in the air. It can embroider muslin and forge anchors; cut steel into ribands, and impel loaded vessels against the fury of the winds and waves.

2. It would be difficult to estimate the value of the benefits which these inventions have conferred upon this country. There is no branch of industry that has not been indebted to them; and, in all the most material, they have not only widened most 'magnificently the field of its exertions, but multiplied a thousandfold the amount of its productions. It is to the genius of one man, too, that all this is mainly owing. And certainly no man ever bestowed such a gift on his kind. The blessing is not only universal, but unbounded; and the fabled inventors of the *plough and the loom*, who were 'deified by the erring grati-

tude of their rude contemporaries, conferred less important benefits on mankind than the inventor of our present steam-engine.

3. This will be the fame of Watt with future generations; and it is sufficient for his race and his country. But to those to whom he more immediately belonged, who lived in his society and enjoyed his conversation, it is not perhaps the character in which he will be most frequently recalled, most deeply lamented, or even most highly admired. Independently of his great attainments in mechanics, Mr. Watt was an extraordinary, and, in many respects, a wonderful man. Perhaps no individual in his age possessed so much and such varied and exact information, had read so much, or remembered what he had read so accurately and well.

4. He had infinite quickness of apprehension, a prodigious memory, and a certain rectifying and methodizing power of understanding, which extracted something precious out of all that was presented to it. His stores of miscellaneous knowledge were immense, and yet less astonishing than the command he had at all times over them. It seemed as if every subject that was casually started in conversation with him had been that which he had been last occupied in studying and exhausting—such was the copiousness, the precision, and the admirable clearness of the information which he poured out upon it, without effort or hesitation.

5. Nor was this promptitude and compass of knowledge confined in any degree to the studies connected with his ordinary pursuits. That he should have been minutely and extensively skilled in chemistry and the arts, and in most of the branches of physical science, might perhaps have been conjectured; but it could not have been inferred, from his usual occupations, that he was curiously learned in many branches of antiquity, metaphysics, medicine,

and etymology, and perfectly at home in all the details of architecture, music, and law. He was well acquainted, too, with most of the modern languages, and familiar with their most recent literature. Nor was it at all extraordinary to hear the great mechanician and engineer detailing and expounding for hours together the metaphysical theories of the German logicians, or criticising the measures or the matter of the German poetry.

LORD JEFFREY: *Essays from the Edinburgh Review.*

ap-pre-hen-sion, grasping a thought.	meth-o-diz-ing, arranging; ordering.
con-triv-ance, plan; device.	ob-du-rate, hard; stubborn.
de-i-fied, worshipped as gods.	promp-ti-tude, quickness; readiness.
duc-til-i-ty, obedience; tractableness.	rec-ti-fy-ing, correcting; controlling.
ex-traor-di-na-ry, uncommon.	reg-u-lat-ed, ruled; controlled.
mag-nif-i-cent-ly, splendidly.	struc-ture, make; formation.
met-a-phys-ics, the science of mind.	stu-pen-dous, amazing.

### 13.—WATERLOO.

JUNE 18, 1815.

[The Battle of Waterloo decided the fate of Napoleon. After his defeat in 1814, he had abdicated his crown and retired to Elba. In the end of that year a Congress met at Vienna to settle the affairs of Europe. Before its work was completed, news arrived that Napoleon had left Elba, and was again surrounded by his troops. War was declared. Wellington occupied Belgium with 80,000 men, prepared to invade France. Blücher with a large army of Prussians marched to join him. Napoleon hastily crossed the frontier, his object being to force an engagement with Wellington before Blücher could come up. In this he was only partly successful. At Waterloo the English held their ground all day till the Prussians came in sight, and then the whole line advanced and drove the French in confusion from the field. Byron's poem refers to a ball given in Brussels by the Duchess of Richmond on the night of June 15th. It was attended by many officers of the allied armies. During the evening news arrived that Napoleon was marching on Brussels. The officers were summoned from the ball-room, and marched before daybreak. Next day, June 16, engagements at *Quatre-Bras* and *Ligny* were fought. *Waterloo* was not fought till two days later.]

1. There was a sound of revelry by night,  
And Belgium's capital<sup>1</sup> had gathered then  
Her Beauty and her Chivalry, and bright  
The lamps shone o'er fair women and brave men:  
A thousand hearts beat happily; and when  
Music arose with its voluptuous swell,

Soft eyes looked love to eyes which spake again,  
And all went merry as a marriage-bell :  
But hush ! hark ! a deep sound strikes like a rising 'knell !

2. Did ye not hear it ? No ; 'twas but the wind,  
Or the car rattling o'er the stony street :  
On with the dance ; let joy be 'unconfined ;  
No sleep till morn, when Youth and Pleasure meet  
To chase the glowing Hours with flying feet :  
But, hark ! that heavy sound breaks in once more,  
As if the clouds its echoes would repeat ;  
And nearer, clearer, deadlier than before !  
Arm ! arm !—it is—it is—the cannon's opening roar !

3. Within a windowed 'niche of that high hall  
Sate Brunswick's fated Chieftain :<sup>2</sup> he did hear  
That sound the first amidst the festival,  
And caught its tone with Death's 'prophetic ear ;  
And when they smiled because he deemed it near,  
His heart more truly knew that peal too well  
Which stretched his father on a bloody bier ;  
And roused the 'vengeance blood alone could quell ;  
He rushed into the field, and, foremost fighting, fell.<sup>3</sup>

4. Ah ! then and there was hurrying to and fro,  
And gathering tears, and tremblings of distress ;  
And cheeks all pale, which but an hour ago  
Blushed at the praise of their own loveliness :  
And there were sudden partings, such as press  
The life from out young hearts, and choking sighs  
Which ne'er might be repeated ; who could guess  
If ever more should meet those mutual eyes,<sup>4</sup>  
Since upon night so sweet such awful morn could rise ?

5. And there was mounting in hot haste : the steed,  
The 'mustered squadron, and the clattering car,  
Went pouring forward with 'impetuous speed,  
And swiftly forming in the ranks of war ;  
And the deep thunder peal on peal afar ;  
And near, the beat of the alarming drum

Roused up the soldier ere the morning star ;  
While thronged the citizens with terror dumb,  
Or whispering, with white lips, "The foe!—they come!  
they come!"

6. And wild and high the "Camerons' gathering"<sup>5</sup> rose,  
The war-note of Lochiel, which Albyn's hills<sup>6</sup>  
Have heard—and heard, too, have her Saxon foes :  
How in the noon of night that 'pibroch thrills  
Savage and shrill ! But with the breath which fills  
Their mountain-pipe, so fill the 'mountaineers  
With the fierce native daring which instils  
The stirring memory of a thousand years,  
And Evan's, Donald's<sup>7</sup> fame rings in each clansman's ears.

7. And Ardennes<sup>8</sup> waves above them her green leaves,  
Dewy with Nature's tear-drops, as they pass,  
Grieving, if aught 'inanimate e'er grieves,  
Over the unreturning brave—alas !  
Ere evening to be trodden like the grass  
Which now beneath them, but above shall grow  
In its next 'verdure, when this fiery mass  
Of living valour, rolling on the foe,  
And burning with high hope, shall moulder cold and low !

8. Last noon beheld them full of lusty life—  
Last eve in Beauty's circle proudly gay ;  
The midnight brought the signal-sound of strife—  
The morn, the 'marshalling in arms—the day,  
Battle's magnificently stern array !  
The thunder-clouds close o'er it, which,<sup>9</sup> when rent,  
The earth is covered thick with other clay,  
Which her own clay shall cover, heaped and pent,  
Rider and horse—friend, foe—in one red burial 'blent !

LORD BYRON: *Childe Harold*.

blent, mix'd.  
im-pet-u-ous, headlong.  
in-an-i-mate, lifeless.  
knell, death-signal.  
mar-shall-ing, arraying.  
moun-tain-oers', Highlanders.

mus-ter-ing, gathering together.  
niche, recess.  
pi-broch, war note; the music of the  
bag-pipe or "mountain-pipe."  
pro-phet-ic, predicting; ominous.  
rev-el-ry, noisy teasing; festivity.

un-con-fined', unbounded; not restrained.  
ven-geance, desire for revenge.

ver-dure, greenness, therefore growth or crop.  
vo-lup-tu-ous, delicious.

<sup>1</sup> Belgium's capital, Brussels.

<sup>2</sup> Brunswick's fated chieftain.—William-Frederick, Duke of Brunswick, fell at Quatre-Bras, when leading the advanced guard of Wellington's army. His father, to whom allusion is made in this stanza, was a great general, killed at the battle of Auerstädt in 1806.

<sup>3</sup> Field, and, foremost fighting, fell.—The repetition of the "f" sound is an example of head-rhyme or alliteration.

<sup>4</sup> Mutual eyes, eyes exchanging loving or sympathetic looks.

<sup>5</sup> "Camerons' gathering," the pibroch or war-note of the Cameron Highlanders (79th Regiment), raised by Allan Cameron of Erroch in 1793. It is called "The war-note of Lochiel," because the Camerons of Lochiel were the chiefs of their clan.—The reference in "Heard, too, have her Saxon foes," is made to the part taken by the Camerons on more than one occasion in support of the Stuarts.

<sup>6</sup> Al'byn's hills, the Highlands of Scotland.

<sup>7</sup> Evan's, Donald's fame.—Sir Evan Cameron of Lochiel, who was remarkable for his personal valour and his integrity, fought under Claverhouse at Killiecrankie (1689). On his death in 1719, he was succeeded by his grandson Donald. The latter was the first to join the standard of the young Pretender in 1745. He was severely wounded at Culloden (1746). He afterwards escaped to France with Prince Charles Edward, entered the French service, and died abroad in 1748.

<sup>8</sup> Ar'dennes.—The wood of Soignies, which lies between Waterloo and Brussels, is supposed to be a remnant of the Forest of Ardennes, which traversed the hilly region so called in the south of Belgium.

<sup>9</sup> Which.—This word has no grammatical connection with the rest of the sentence. The phrase is plainly an imitation of the Latin construction called the ablative absolute; but the English equivalent of that is, "which being rent." The prose paraphrase would be, "and, when they are rent."

## 14.—THE REFORM BILL.

1832 A.D.

[The French Revolution and the Peninsular War delayed reform in England—the former by exciting mistrust of all changes, the latter by absorbing the national interest. The peace hastened reform, as it was followed by great distress arising from dear food, low wages, and burdensome taxation. Popular discontent was wide-spread; but the people looked in vain to Parliament for relief, because the House of Commons as then constituted did not really represent the nation.]

1. It was in those days of misery and violence that the demand for reform in our system of Parliamentary representation first became formidable. Prominent among those who created and directed public opinion on this subject was William Cobbett.<sup>1</sup> His writings were read beside every cottage hearth in England, and exercised an



authority immediate and powerful. Cobbett never ceased to urge that misgovernment was the source of all the misery which the people endured, and that Parliamentary reform was its natural and its only cure. His words sank deep into the public heart. Clubs to promote reform sprang up all over the country, and before the end of 1816 the demand even for universal suffrage<sup>2</sup> was loud and urgent.

2. The great work of the next sixteen years was this agitation for reform of the representative system. Had governments of greater wisdom or of inferior strength been in office, much evil would have been spared. But the right of the people to interfere in politics had been for many years disused;<sup>3</sup> and a government, powerful by right of triumph over the greatest of all military despotisms,<sup>4</sup> was not prepared to suffer its revival.

3. The contest was a singularly bitter one. The government had no foundation in national choice; the relations between rulers and people were not friendly, but hostile. The people looked upon the government as a power high above them, of opposing interests, oppressive, 'contemptuous, cruel. The government believed that the new impulse which had seized the masses threatened danger to the institutions of the country; that every popular leader was a traitor; that every demand for political privileges was seditious. They spurned the thought of concession, and prepared to carry out inflexibly to its bitter end the policy of forcible suppression.

4. In this unhappy spirit the greatest of our domestic battles was fought. Many of the years across which the contest stretched were years of acute national suffering, for it was long before the country recovered from the exhaustion of the war. The resumption of specie payments<sup>5</sup> in 1819 intensified the general distress. Money became very scarce; exports fell away; prices of nearly *all commodities* sank about one half. Wide-spread ruin



passed over the mercantile class; and England, it was said, "exhibited all the appearances of a dying nation."

5. The feeling deepened rapidly among a suffering people that they were ruined by misgovernment; that their welfare was deliberately sacrificed to promote the interests of the privileged classes; that there was no safety for them but in gaining for themselves a share in the government. Among the working population of the cities especially, reform became now the absorbing interest. They were unused to agitate,<sup>6</sup> and at the outset they were not happy in their leaders. They pledged themselves to abstain from the purchase of articles which contributed to the revenue.

6. An 'ominous passion for military drill sprang up among the artisans. The unrepresented towns began to appoint representatives, who should claim a place in that House from which they were wrongfully excluded. Huge meetings, expressing themselves by monster petitions, were continually held; and unhappily these constitutional methods of influencing the legislature were 'emphasized by occasional riots.

7. The government was resolute to extinguish, by military force, the discontent of the people. The Manchester reformers<sup>7</sup> held a meeting of sixty thousand persons, with no design but to petition for Parliamentary reform. A strong military force was provided by 1819 the authorities—infantry, cavalry, and artillery. A.D. The proceedings had scarcely begun when a large body of mounted yeomanry dashed at a rapid trot among the defenceless multitude. Many persons—men, women, and little children—were carried from the field killed or injured. The thanks of the prince-regent were promptly offered to the magistrates who had directed this wicked and cowardly slaughter. The chairman and others who promoted the meeting were put on their trial for 'sedition.'

tion, and were sentenced to various terms of imprisonment.

8. In further prosecution of the mode of treatment which was thus applied, Parliament was now induced to pass the Six Acts<sup>8</sup> proposed by the Tory government. Henceforth Englishmen were not to assemble in larger numbers than fifty, unless a magistrate convened them; and the exciting privilege of carrying a flag on such occasions was expressly denied them. The magistrates had large powers given to search houses suspected to contain weapons. Military exercises were forbidden. Newspapers were fettered with certain arrangements as to stamps, which, it was held, would restrain their unwarrantable boldness in discussing the measures of government. The liberties of Englishmen were now at the discretion of Lord Castlereagh<sup>9</sup> and Lord Sidmouth.<sup>10</sup>

9. The Whig chiefs represented in Parliament the movement which was rapidly taking possession of the country. Their management of the cause was at the outset timid even to weakness. They aimed to mediate between the extreme Liberals and the Tories—between that party which was making “unlimited demands,” and that other party which replied with “a total and peremptory denial.”

10. How unevenly at this time they held the balance may be judged from Lord John Russell's<sup>11</sup> proposal of 1819. It was nothing greater than that the franchise of any constituency convicted of bribery should be handed over to some populous town. Even this morsel of reform was denied. The Whigs were obliged to accept the ‘disfranchisement of one very rotten burgh and the transfer of its franchise.

11. Deep among the masses of the British people was already a demand for universal suffrage and vote by *ballot*.<sup>12</sup> Among the governing class was a settled convic-

tion that any demand by the people for a share in the government was deserving of punishment as a crime. It was evident that a satisfactory measure of reform was not near. Many years passed before it was wrung from the 'reluctant hands of those who had it in their power to give or to withhold. The people never relaxed their effort to gain reform. Their patience and forbearance under the cruel 'frustration of their wishes argued fitness for the privileges from which they were debarred. They learned to put trust in the moderate counsels of Earl Grey,<sup>13</sup> Lord John Russell, and the Whig party, and they ceased to think of force. The wishes of a people without representation in Parliament gathered weight slowly, but quite inevitably.

[The French revolution of 1830 hastened the crisis. Then came the accession of William IV., and the general election consequent thereon, which returned a Parliament strongly charged with the reforming spirit.]

12. At the very outset Earl Grey made it plain that the question of immediate reform was to be made the engrossing business of the session. The Duke of Wellington, on the part of the ministry, intimated, with the calm resolution which never failed him, that in his opinion the country possessed a legislature which answered every good purpose, and that he would resist any 1830 proposal of change. But within a few days the A.D. government saw reasons for resigning, and a ministry pledged to reform, with Earl Grey as prime minister, was appointed.

13. It was not, however, to be permitted to this Parliament to 'inaugurate the era which was about to open. The ministry having sustained a defeat, appealed once more to the country, and a new Parliament 1831 was returned, pledged to support to the utmost the A.D. great measure which now absorbed the thought of the British people.

14. The Reform Bill was carried in the House of Commons by great majorities. But victory was not yet secured. The House of Lords—appropriately commanded by the Duke of Wellington in its antagonism to popular rights—threw out the Bill. Earl Grey demanded from the king power to create peers in sufficient number to overbear the resistance offered by the House of Lords. The timid monarch refused, and the ministry resigned.

15. Popular excitement was unbounded. Petitions rained upon the House of Commons, demanding that the House should refuse to vote supplies. A run upon the Bank was commenced. Enormous meetings in all parts of the country resolved to pay no taxes till the Bill should pass. Plans were laid for arming large bodies of men in the northern counties and marching on London. There were serious discussions of barricades and street-fighting. The duke was reported to have said that “there was a way to make the people quiet.” It was believed that he meant to suppress reform by violence, and the dragoons were seen by the eye of imagination, if not in actual fact, grinding their sabres as for the work of immediate battle.

16. Meantime, while this fierce excitement was raging over the land, a feeble effort was made to form a Tory administration with a view to some acceptable compromise. The hopeless attempt was quickly abandoned, and Earl Grey returned to office with power to add to the House of Lords such a number of new peers as would effectually quell the resistance of the obstructive dignitaries. Their lordships did not wait to be thus diluted. The Duke of Wellington and a hundred other peers, majestically  
**1832** sullen, quitted the House and ceased from troubling.

A.D. Amid rejoicing such as political victory never awakened in England before, the great measure *passed which inaugurated, for all the coming generations,*

government of the people, by the people, and for the people.<sup>14</sup>

ROBERT MACKENZIE: *The Nineteenth Century*.

**con-temp-tu-ous**, scornful.

**dig-ni-ta-ries**, noblemen.

**dis-fran-chise-ment**, taking away of the franchise, or right to be represented in Parliament.

**em-pha-sized**, made more telling.

**frus-tra-tion**, baffling; defeat.

**in-au-gu-rate**, begin; introduce.

**in-flex-i-bly**, rigidly.

**in-tens-i-fied**, made greater.

**om-i-nous**, boding ill.

**per-emp-to-ry**, absolute; final.

**re-luc-tant**, unwilling.

**se-di-tion**, the act of stirring up resistance to law.

**sin-gu-lar-ly**, unusually.

<sup>1</sup> William Cobbett, an active and trenchant political writer, whose pen wielded great influence from 1800 till his death in 1835. He at first opposed reform and denounced democratic tendencies; but he gradually changed, and became in the end an enthusiastic reformer. He edited the *Weekly Register* from 1802 till 1835. He also wrote an *English Grammar*. Born 1762.

<sup>2</sup> Universal suffrage, every citizen having a vote.

<sup>3</sup> Right... disused.—At a trial for libel in 1811 the judge (Baron Wood) explicitly denied the existence of such a right. "The right to discuss the acts of our legislature," he said, "would be a large permission indeed."

<sup>4</sup> The greatest of all military despotisms.—That of Napoleon.

<sup>5</sup> Specie payments, payments in coin, or "hard money," opposed to "paper money."

<sup>6</sup> Unused to agitate.—So utterly were the people excluded from any part in politics, that for twenty years there had not been in Edinburgh any public meeting of a political character.

<sup>7</sup> The Manchester reformers.—As the meeting was held in St. Peter's Fields, the affair was called, in ridicule, "Peterloo."

<sup>8</sup> The Six Acts.—These were (1) for the more speedy execution of justice; (2) to prevent military training; (3) to punish profane and seditious libels; (4) for seizing arms; (5) for repressing libels; (6) to prevent seditious meetings.

<sup>9</sup> Lord Castlereagh, Viscount Castlereagh, succeeded his father as Marquis of Londonderry in 1821. He was Foreign Secretary in Lord Liver-

pool's Administration from 1812 till his death in 1822. During the greater part of that time he was leader of the Tory party in the House of Commons, and in that capacity resisted the popular demand for a repeal of the Corn Laws and for Parliamentary reform. His mind gave way in 1822, and he committed suicide.

<sup>10</sup> Lord Sidmouth, Henry Addington, Speaker of the House of Commons from 1789 till 1801, and Prime Minister from 1801 till 1804. On his retirement he was made a peer. He was Home Secretary in Lord Liverpool's Administration, from 1812 till 1822. He joined heartily in the repressive policy of Castlereagh, and in 1817 he issued a circular to lord-lieutenants ordering the adoption of severe measures against the writers of "seditious pamphlets," which was so extreme that it could not be acted on.

<sup>11</sup> Lord John Russell, made Earl Russell in 1861, was the great champion of Parliamentary reform in the House of Commons from 1819 till 1860. He introduced his first Reform Bill on March 1, 1831; his second on July 24, 1831; his third, which became the Reform Act, on December 6, 1831. By his efforts, the repeal of the Test and Corporation Acts was obtained in 1828. He died in 1878.

<sup>12</sup> Vote by ballot, that is, secret voting, so that it may not be known for whom the voter has voted. The object is to prevent men from suffering for voting against the wishes of their employers or their landlords.

<sup>13</sup> Earl Grey, Prime Minister when the Reform Act was passed in 1832.

He had introduced the question of Parliamentary reform in the House of Commons as early as 1797.

<sup>14</sup> For the people.—The Reform Act bestowed the privilege of the franchise in towns upon occupants who paid a rental of ten pounds; in counties, upon those who paid a rental of forty pounds. In England, fifty-six boroughs with a population under two thousand, and returning one hundred and eleven members, were disfranchised; thirty

boroughs with a population under four thousand, and returning each two members, were reduced to one member. Twenty new boroughs received each one member; twenty-two received each two members: the county members were raised from ninety-four to one hundred and fifty-nine. Scotland received an addition of eight borough members. The Reform Act of 1837 still further lowered the franchise. It increased the number of Scottish members to sixty.

## 15.—VICTORIA'S TEARS.

1837 A.D.

[Queen Victoria's first Privy Council was held at Kensington Palace on the morning of her accession, June 20, 1837. When the herald proclaimed her as Queen of the United Kingdom of Great Britain and Ireland, she threw herself into her mother's arms and burst into tears.]

1. "O maiden! heir of Kings!  
     A King has left his place;  
 The majesty of Death has swept  
     All other<sup>1</sup> from his face:  
 And thou upon thy mother's<sup>2</sup> breast,  
     No longer lean adown,  
 But take the glory for the rest,  
 And rule the land that loves thee best!"  
     The maiden wept—  
     She wept to wear a crown!
2. They decked her courtly halls;  
     They reined her hundred steeds;  
 They shouted at her palace gate,  
     "A noble Queen succeeds!"  
 Her name has stirred the mountain's sleep,  
     Her praise has filled the town;  
 And mourners, God had stricken deep,  
 Looked hearkening up and did not weep.  
     Alone she wept,  
     Who wept to wear a crown!

3. She saw no purples shine,  
 For tears had dimmed her eyes;  
 She only knew her childhood's flowers  
 Were happier pageantries!  
 And while the heralds played their part,  
 Those million shouts to drown,  
 "God save the Queen!" from hill to mart,  
 She heard through all her beating heart,  
 And turned, and wept—  
 She wept to wear a crown.
4. God save thee, weeping Queen!  
 Thou shalt be well beloved!  
 The tyrant's sceptre cannot move,<sup>3</sup>  
 As those pure tears have moved!  
 The nature in thine eyes we see,  
 That tyrants cannot own—  
 The love, that guardeth liberties;  
 Strange blessing on the nation lies,  
 Whose Sovereign wept—  
 Yea, wept to wear a crown.
5. God bless thee, weeping Queen,  
 With blessing more divine!  
 And fill with happier love than Earth's  
 That tender heart of thine!  
 That when the thrones of Earth shall be  
 As low as graves brought down,  
 A pierc'd hand may give to thee  
 The crown which angels shout to see!—  
 Thou wilt not weep  
 To wear that heavenly crown.

ELIZABETH B. BROWNING.

<sup>1</sup> All other, that is, all other majesty, all traces of the earthly greatness of the King.

<sup>2</sup> Thy mother, the Duchess of Kent, widow of Edward, Duke of Kent (fourth son of George III.), who died in 1820. The Duchess of Kent, a Princess of

Saxe-Coburg-Saalfeld, devoted herself to the education of her daughter, with a special view to the exalted position she was destined to fill.

<sup>3</sup> Cannot move, cannot move the hearts of subjects, or excite their sympathy.

## 16.—THE RETREAT FROM CABUL.

1842 A.D.

[The English interference in Afghanistan in 1838-42 led to the greatest disaster which ever befell the English arms. The Indian government and the government at home held it to be indispensable that English influence should predominate at Cabul, in order to check the intrigues of Persia and of Russia, who were said to be acting in concert. Dost Mahomed was the accepted and powerful ruler of the country; and he was anxious to be on friendly terms with England. But he was distrusted by Lord Auckland, the governor-general of India, who thought we should be more secure if a prince of our own selecting ruled Afghanistan. We adopted Shah Soojah, the representative of the exiled dynasty, as our *protégé*. We sent an army to Cabul, overthrew Dost Mahomed, sent him as a prisoner to India, and set up Shah Soojah in his place. The Afghans refused to accept Shah Soojah. They rose in riot at Cabul and slew the English envoy, Sir Alexander Burnes, and all his attendants. Akbar Khan, Dost Mahomed's son, put himself at the head of the insurgents. With his own hand he slew, at a conference, Sir William Macnaghten, one of the English generals. He required the English army to withdraw from Afghanistan.]

1. The withdrawal from Cabul began. It was the heart of a cruel winter. The English had to make their way through the awful pass of Koord Cabul. This stupendous gorge runs for some five miles between mountain ranges so narrow, lofty, and grim, that in the winter season the rays of the sun can hardly pierce its darkness even at the noon-tide. Down the centre dashed a precipitous mountain torrent so fiercely that the stern frost of that terrible time could not stay its course. The snow lay in masses on the ground; the rocks and stones that raised their heads above the snow in the way of the unfortunate travellers were slippery with frost. Soon the white snow began to be stained and splashed with blood.

2. Fearful as this Koord Cabul Pass was, it was only a degree worse than the road which for two whole days the English had to traverse to reach it. The army which set out from Cabul numbered more than four thousand fighting men, of whom Europeans, it should be said, formed but a small proportion; and some twelve thousand camp followers of all kinds. There were also many women and *children*: Lady Macnaghten, widow of the murdered





cable confusion among the snow and amid the relentless enemies. "The massacre," to quote again from Sir J. W. Kaye, "was fearful in this Koord Cabul Pass. Three thousand men are said to have fallen under the fire of the enemy, or to have dropped down 'paralyzed and exhausted to be slaughtered by the Afghan knives. And amidst these fearful scenes of carnage, through a shower of matchlock balls, rode English ladies on horseback or in camel-panniers, sometimes vainly endeavouring to keep their children beneath their eyes, and losing them in the confusion and bewilderment of the desolating march."

5. Was it for this, then, that our troops had been induced to capitulate? Was this the safe-conduct which the Afghan chiefs had promised in return for their accepting the 'ignominious conditions imposed on them? Some of the chiefs did exert themselves to their utmost to protect the unfortunate English. It is not certain what the real wish of Akbar Khan may have been. He protested that he had no power to restrain the hordes of fanatical Ghilzyes<sup>s</sup> whose own immediate chiefs had not authority enough to keep them from murdering the English whenever they got a chance. The force of some few hundred horsemen whom Akbar Khan had with him was utterly incapable, he declared, of maintaining order among such a mass of 'infuriated and lawless savages.

6. Akbar Khan constantly appeared on the scene during this journey of terror. At every opening or break of the long straggling flight he and his little band of followers showed themselves on the horizon: trying still to protect the English from utter ruin, as he declared; come to gloat over their misery and to see that it was surely 'accomplished, some of the unhappy English were ready to believe. Yet his presence was something that seemed to *give a hope of protection.*

7. *Akbar Khan* at length startled the English by a

proposal that the women and children who were with the army should be handed over to his custody, to be conveyed by him in safety to Peshawur.<sup>4</sup> There was nothing better to be done. The only 'modification of his request, or command, that could be obtained was that the husbands of the married ladies should accompany their wives. With this agreement the women and children were handed over to the care of this dreaded enemy, and Lady Macnaghten had to undergo the agony of a personal interview with the man whose own hand had killed her husband. Few scenes in poetry or romance can surely be more thrilling with emotion than such a meeting as this must have been. Akbar Khan was kindly in his language, and declared to the unhappy widow that he would give his right arm to undo, if it were possible, the deed that he had done.

8. The women and children and the married men whose wives were among this party were taken from the unfortunate army and placed under the care of Akbar Khan. As events turned out, this proved a fortunate thing for them. But in any case it was the best thing that could be done. Not one of these women and children could have lived through the horrors of the journey which lay before the remnant of what had once been a British force.

9. The march was resumed; new horrors set in; new heaps of corpses stained the snow; and then Akbar Khan presented himself with a fresh proposition. In the treaty made at Cabul between the English authorities and the Afghan chiefs there was an article which 'stipulated that "the English force at Jellalabad shall march for Peshawur before the Cabul army arrives, and shall not delay on the road." Akbar Khan was especially anxious to get rid of the little army at Jellalabad at the near end of the Khyber Pass. He desired above all things that it should be on the march home to India; either that it might be out of

his way, or that he might have a chance of destroying it on its way.

10. It was in great measure as a security for its moving that he desired to have the women and children under his care. It is not likely that he meant any harm to the women and children; it must be remembered that his father and many of the women of his family were under the control of the British Government as prisoners in Hindostan. But he fancied that if he had the English women in his hands the army at Jellalabad could not refuse to obey the condition set down in the article of the treaty.

11. Now that he had the women in his power, however, he demanded other 'guarantees with openly acknowledged purpose of keeping these latter until Jellalabad should have been 'evacuated. He demanded that General Elphinstone, the commander, with his second in command, and also one other officer, should hand themselves over to him as hostages. He promised if this were done to exert himself more than before to restrain the fanatical tribes, and to provide the army in the Koord Cabul Pass with provisions. There was nothing for it but to submit; and the English general himself became, with the women and children, a captive in the hands of the 'inexorable enemy.

12. Then the march of the army, without a general, went on again. Soon it became the story of a general without an army; before very long there was neither general nor army. It is idle to lengthen a tale of mere horrors. The straggling remnant of an army entered the Jugdulluk Pass<sup>5</sup>—a dark, steep, narrow, ascending path between crags. The miserable toilers found that the fanatical, implacable tribes had barricaded the pass. All was over. The army of Cabul was finally extinguished in that 'barricaded pass. It was a trap; the British were *taken in it*. A few mere fugitives escaped from the scene

of actual slaughter, and were on the road to Jellalabad, where Sale and his little army were holding their own.

13. When they were within sixteen miles of Jellalabad the number was reduced to six. Of these six, five were killed by straggling 'marauders on the way. One man alone reached Jellalabad to tell the tale. Literally one man, Dr. Brydon, came to Jellalabad out of a moving host which had numbered in all some sixteen thousand when it set out on its march. The curious eye will search through history or fiction in vain for any picture more thrilling with the suggestions of an awful catastrophe than that of this solitary survivor, faint and reeling on his jaded horse, as he appeared under the walls of Jellalabad, to bear the tidings of our Thermopylæ of pain and shame.

[This is the crisis of the story. General Sale declined to quit Jellalabad, and was besieged there by Akbar Khan. As soon as Sale learned that General Pollock was forcing the Khyber Pass to relieve him, he attacked the Afghans and completely defeated them. Pollock then marched swiftly on Cabul and destroyed its fortifications, after having rescued Lady Sale and the other hostages.]

JUSTIN M'CARTHY: *A History of Our Own Times.*

bar-ri-cad'-ed, fortified roughly; obstructed.

cha-ot'-ic, confused.

e-vac-u-ät-ed, left empty; vacated.

fu-gl-itives, persons in flight.

guar-an-tees', pledges; securities.

guer-il-la, irregular; harassing.

het-er-o-ge-ne-ous, of different kinds; dissimilar.

ig-no-min'-ious, shameful.

in-ex-o-ra-ble, unyielding; pitiless.

in-fu'-ri-ät-ed, mad with anger.

ma-raud'-ers, plunderers.

mod-i-fi-ca-tion, reduction; change.

par-a-lyzed, unnerved.

pre-cip-i-tous, very steep.

stip-u-lät-ed, bargained.

stu-pen'-dous, wonderful; awful.

<sup>1</sup> Jellalabad', a fortified town at the western end of the Khy'ber Pass; 90 miles from Ca'bul and 80 from Peshaw'ur.

<sup>2</sup> Khy'ber Pass, the chief northern pass from India to Afghanistan. It begins about 12 miles from Peshawur, and is 80 miles long. The rocks rise to 1,000 feet above the narrow pass.

<sup>3</sup> Ghil'zyes, one of the hill tribes that infest the mountains between India and Afghanistan.

<sup>4</sup> Peshaw'ur, the town in India nearest to the Khyber Pass; 40 miles west of Attock on the Indus.

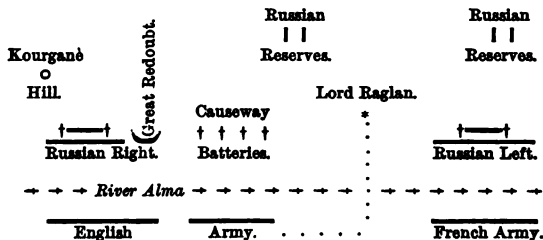
<sup>5</sup> Jugdulluk' Pass; between the Koord Cabul Pass and Jellalabad. It is 5,800 feet above sea-level.

## 17.—THE TURNING-POINT AT THE ALMA.

SEPTEMBER 20, 1854.

[England and France became the allies of Turkey against Russia in the beginning of 1854, and the Crimean War began. The object of the expedition was to attack Sebastopol, the great Russian stronghold. The allies landed at Eupatoria, on the west coast of the Crimea, on September 14th. A week later they reached the river Alma, and found fifty thousand Russians under Prince Menschikoff posted on the rocky heights of its south bank, and prepared to dispute their passage. The battle was hotly contested. Not till after three hours' hard fighting did the allies succeed in forcing the passage of the river. Then the scaling of the southern heights was commenced. After giving orders for the general advance, Lord Raglan, accompanied only by his staff, rode across the Alma at a point between the English and the French armies, mounted the opposite slope, and took up his position on a knoll far in advance of either of the allied armies, and in the very heart of the enemy's position. From this spot he commanded a view of nearly the whole ground destined to be the scene of the English attack. The writer was beside Lord Raglan on the knoll.]

1. LORD RAGLAN<sup>1</sup> looked upon that part of the Russian army which confronted ours; he saw it in profile; he saw down into the flank of the Causeway batteries, which barred the mouth of the pass; and, beyond, he saw into the shoulder of the Great Redoubt, then about to be stormed by Codrington's brigade. Above all, he saw, drawn up with



splendid precision, the bodies of infantry which the enemy held in reserve. They were massed in two columns. The formation of each mass looked close and perfect, as though it had been made of marble and cut by rule and plumb-line.

2. These troops, being in reserve, were of course some way in rear of the enemy's batteries and his foremost battalions, but they were only nine hundred yards from

the eye of the English general ; for it was Lord Raglan's strange and happy destiny to have ridden almost into the rear of the positions, and to be almost as near to the enemy's reserves as he was to the front of their array.

3. All this—now told with labour of words—Lord Raglan saw at a glance ; and at the same moment he divined the fatal 'perturbation which would be inflicted upon the enemy by the mere appearance of our head-quarter staff in this part of the field. The knoll, though much lower than the summit of the telegraph height, stood

out bold and plain above the pass. It was clear that even from afar the enemy would make out that it was crowned by a group of plumed officers. It would not, Lord Raglan thought, occur to any Russian general that fifteen or twenty staff officers, whether French or English, could have reached the knoll without having thousands of troops close at hand. The enemy's generals would therefore infer that a large proportion of the allied force had won its way into the heart of the Russian position.



4. This was the view which Lord Raglan's mind had seized when, at the very moment of crowning the knoll, he looked round, and said, "Our presence here will have the best effect." Then, glancing down as he spoke into the flank of the Causeway batteries, and carrying his eye round to the enemy's infantry reserves, Lord Raglan said, "Now, if we had a couple of guns here!" His wish was instantly seized by Colonel Dickson and one or two other officers. They rode off in all haste.

5. The rest of the group which had followed Lord Raglan remained with him upon the summit of the knoll, and every one, facing eastward and taking out his glass, began to scan the ground destined to be assailed by the English troops.

6. The Light Division had not then begun to emerge from the thick ground and the channel of the river, but presently some small groups, and afterwards larger gatherings of the red-coats appeared upon the top of the river's bank, on the Russian side; and at length, seen in profile by Lord Raglan, there began the 'tumultuous onset of Codrington's brigade against the Great Redoubt.

7. Lord Raglan knew that the distance between him and the scene of the struggle at the Redoubt was too great to allow of his then tampering with it; for any order that he might send would lose its worth in the journey, and tend to breed confusion. And it was not in his way to assuage his impatience by making 'impotent efforts.

8. Watching the onslaught of Codrington's brigade, Lord Raglan had seen the men ascend the slope and rush up over the 'parapet of the Great Redoubt. Then moments, then whole minutes—precious minutes—elapsed, and he had to bear the anguish of finding that the ground where he longed to see the supports marching up was still left bare. Then—a too sure result of that default—he had to see our *soldiery* 'relinquishing their capture and retreating in *clusters down the hill*.



9. This was the condition of things when, having been hurried down to the ford, and dragged through the river, and up over steep, rugged ground, the two guns for which Lord Raglan had prayed were brought up at length to the summit of the knoll. They were guns belonging to Turner's battery, and they were already crossing the river when Dickson came upon them. The two pieces were soon 'unlimbered, and one of them—for the artillerymen had not all been able to keep pace—was worked by Dickson, with his own hands.

10. The guns were pointed upon the flank of the Causeway batteries. Every one watched keenly for the result of the first shot. The first shot failed. Some one said, "Allow a little more for the wind;" and the words were not spoken as though they were a quotation from "Ivanhoe," but rather in a way showing that the speaker knew something of artillery practice. The next shot, or the next shot but one, took effect upon the Causeway batteries. It struck, they say, a 'tumbrel which stood just in rear of the guns.

11. It presently became a joyful certainty that the Causeway batteries exposing their flank to the fire from the knoll could not hold their ground; and in a few moments a keen-eyed officer, who was one of the group around Lord Raglan, cried out, with great joy, "He is carrying off his guns!" And this was true. The field-pieces which formed the Causeway batteries were rapidly limbered up, and dragged to another ground far up in the rear.

12. With the two great columns of infantry, which constituted the enemy's reserves, it fared no better. After not more than two failures, the gunners got their range, and our nine-pounders ploughed through the 'serried masses of the two Russian columns, cutting lanes through and through them. Yet for some minutes the columns stood firm. And even when the still increasing havoc at length

overruled the 'punctilio of those brave men, it seemed to be in obedience to orders, and not under the stress of any confusing terror, that the two great columns gave way. They retreated in good order.

13. Our gunners then tried their pieces upon the Vladimir battalions, and, although the range was too great to allow of their striking the column, they impressed the Russian commander with a contrary belief. He was sure that these troops were reached by the guns on the knoll; and it will be seen by-and-by that this his belief was one of the causes which helped to govern his movements.

14. This was the time when the great column of the Ouglitz corps—being fired, it seemed, with a vehement spirit—was still marching down from the Kourganè Hill, with a mind to support the Vladimir battalions and enable them to press the retreat of our soldiery, then coming down in clusters from the Great Redoubt; but the 'disasters which Lord Raglan had that moment inflicted upon the enemy, by the aid of the two guns on the knoll, made it natural for the Russian generals, who saw what was done, to stop short in any forward movement.

15. The Ouglitz column, as we have seen, was stopped in the midst of its eager advance; and, for want of the support which these troops had been going to lend, the 'triumphant Vladimir column was brought to a halt on the site of the Great Redoubt.

16. So, here was the spell which now for several minutes had been governing the battle. The 'apparition of a score of plumed horsemen on this knoll may have had more or less to do with the resolve which led the Russian general to dismantle the Great Redoubt; but, at all events, this apparition and the fire of Lord Raglan's two guns had enforced the withdrawal of the Causeway batteries,—had *laid open the entrance* of the pass,—had shattered the *enemy's reserves*,—had stopped the onward march of the

Ouglitz battalions, and had chained up the high-mettled Vladimir in the midst of its triumphant advance.

A. W. KINGLAKE: *Invasion of the Crimea.*

ap-pa-ri'tion, appearance; vision.

bat-tal'ions, bodies of infantry.

dis-as-ters, misfortunes.

im-po-tent, useless; powerless.

par'a-pet, breast-work. [ance.

per-tur-ba-tion, disorder; disturb-

punc-til'io, sense of honour.

re-lif'-quish-ing, giving up.

ser'-ried, close; crowded.

tri-umph'-ant, victorious.

tum'-bril, an ammunition cart.

tu-mult-u-ous, confused.

un-lim'-bered, separated from the limber, or gun-carriage.

<sup>1</sup> Lord Raglan, James Fitzroy Somerset, was aide-de-camp to the Duke of Wellington during the Peninsular War. He lost his right arm at Waterloo. He was commander-in-chief of the English

at the beginning of the Crimean War, but he was cut off by disease at Bala-klava. Marshal St. Arnaud was the French commander. He also fell a victim to fatigue and anxiety.

## 18.—THE HISTORY OF ENGLAND, THE HISTORY OF PROGRESS.

1. The history of England is emphatically the history of progress. It is the history of a constant movement of the public mind, of a constant change in the institutions of a great society. We see that society, at the beginning of the twelfth century, in a state more miserable than the state in which the most degraded nations of the East now are. We see it subjected to the tyranny of a handful of armed foreigners. We see a strong distinction of caste separating the victorious Norman from the vanquished Saxon. We see the great body of the population in a state of personal slavery. We see the most debasing and cruel superstition exercising boundless dominion over the most elevated and benevolent minds. We see the multitude sunk in brutal ignorance, and the studious few engaged in acquiring what did not deserve the name of knowledge.

2. In the course of seven centuries the wretched and degraded race have become the greatest and most highly civilized people that ever the world saw; have spread their dominion over every quarter of the globe; have scattered

the seeds of mighty empires and republics over vast continents, of which no dim intimation had ever reached Ptolemy<sup>1</sup> or Strabo;<sup>2</sup> have created a maritime power which would 'annihilate in a quarter of an hour the navies of Tyre, Athens, Carthage, Venice, and Genoa together; have carried the science of healing, the means of locomotion and correspondence, every mechanical art, every manufacture, everything that promotes the convenience of life, to a perfection which our ancestors would have thought magical; have produced a literature which may boast of works not inferior to the noblest which Greece has bequeathed to us; have discovered the laws which regulate the motions of the heavenly bodies; have speculated with exquisite 'subtlety on the operations of the human mind; have been the acknowledged leaders of the human race in the career of political improvement.

3. The history of England is the history of this great change in the moral, intellectual, and physical state of the inhabitants of our own island. There is much amusing and instructive 'episodical matter; but this is the main action. To us, we will own, nothing is so interesting and delightful as to contemplate the steps by which the England of the Doomsday Book, the England of the Curfew and the Forest Laws, the England of crusaders, monks, schoolmen, astrologers, serfs, outlaws, became the England which we know and love, the classic ground of Liberty and Philosophy, the school of all Knowledge, the mart of all Trade.

4. The Charter of Henry Beauclerk,<sup>3</sup> the Great Charter,<sup>4</sup> the first assembling of the House of Commons,<sup>5</sup> the extinction of personal slavery,<sup>6</sup> the separation from the See of Rome,<sup>7</sup> the Petition of Right,<sup>8</sup> the Habeas Corpus Act,<sup>9</sup> the Revolution,<sup>10</sup> the establishment of the liberty of unlicensed *printing*,<sup>11</sup> the abolition of religious disabilities,<sup>12</sup> the reform of the representative system,<sup>13</sup> all these seem to us to be the

successive stages of one great revolution ; nor can we fully comprehend any one of these memorable events unless we look at it in connection with those which preceded and with those which followed it.

5. Each of these great and ever-memorable struggles, Saxon against Norman, Villein against Lord, Protestant against Papist, Roundhead against Cavalier, Dissenter against Churchman, Manchester against Old Sarum, was, in its own order and season, a struggle, on the result of which were staked the dearest interests of the human race ; and every man who, in the contest which in his time divided our country, 'distinguished himself on the right side, is entitled to our gratitude and respect.

6. We said that the history of England is the history of progress, and when we take a comprehensive view of it, it is so. But when examined in small, separate portions, it may with more propriety be called a history of actions and reactions. We have often thought that the motion of the public mind in our country resembles that of the sea when the tide is rising. Each successive wave rushes forward, breaks, and rolls back ; but the great flood is steadily coming in. A person who looked on the waters only for a moment might fancy that they were retiring, or a person who looked on them only for five minutes might fancy that they were rushing 'capriciously to and fro ; but when he keeps his eye on them for a quarter of an hour, and sees one sea-mark disappear after another, it is impossible for him to doubt of the general direction in which the ocean is moved.

7. Just such has been the course of events in England. In the history of the national mind, which is, in truth, the history of the nation, we must carefully distinguish between that 'recoil which regularly follows every advance, and a great general ebb. If we take short intervals,—if we compare 1640 and 1660, 1680 and 1685, 1708 and

1712, 1782 and 1794,—we find a 'retrogression. But if we take centuries,—if, for example, we compare 1794 with 1660, or with 1685,—we cannot doubt in which direction society is proceeding.

LORD MACAULAY.

an-ni'hi-late, bring to nothing; destroy;  
ca-pri-cious-ly, wilfully.  
dis-tin-guished, made famous.  
ep-i-sod-i-cal, accidental; digressive.

pro-pri-e-ty, correctness; fitness.  
re-coil', falling back.  
ret-ro-gres-sion, going back.  
subt-le-ty, acuteness.  
van-quished, conquered.

<sup>1</sup> Ptol'emy, a famous Egyptian geographer, who flourished at Alexandria early in the second century after Christ.

<sup>2</sup> Stra'bo, a famous Greek geographer; died 20 A.D.

<sup>3</sup> Charter of Henry Beaucherk, the Charter of Liberties issued by Henry I. in 1100.

<sup>4</sup> The Great Charter, granted by King John in 1215.

<sup>5</sup> First.....House of Commons, by the Earl of Leicester in 1265.

<sup>6</sup> Extinction of personal slavery.—Serfdom disappeared from England by insensible degrees, and not as the result of any special enactment. It had almost entirely died out at the end of the dynasty of York (1485). Various causes are assigned for its disappearance;—the Wars of the Roses, which destroyed the power of the nobility; the growth of towns, which were homes of free labour; the assertion of the rights of the serfs in popular risings, such as Wat Tyler's insurrection.

<sup>7</sup> Separation from the See of Rome, in 1534, when Parliament declared the King to be head of the Church in England.

<sup>8</sup> The Petition of Right, drawn up by the Commons, and reluctantly accepted by Charles I. in 1628. It claimed exemption from (1) taxation without consent of Parliament, (2) punishment for resisting such taxation, (3) billeting of soldiers, (4) martial law in time of peace.

<sup>9</sup> The Habeas Corpus Act, passed in 1679, secures the liberty of the subject by limiting the time during which one may be imprisoned without a trial.

<sup>10</sup> The Revolution, of 1688, followed by the Bill of Rights (1689) and the Act of Settlement (1701).

<sup>11</sup> Liberty of unlicensed printing, secured in 1694, when Parliament refused to renew the expired Act which had restrained the press.

<sup>12</sup> Abolition of religious disabilities.—The Test and Corporation Acts (1661, 1673) were repealed in 1828; Roman Catholics were admitted into Parliament in 1829; Jews were admitted in 1858.

<sup>13</sup> Reform of the representative system.—The Parliamentary Reform Act was passed in 1832; the Municipal Reform Act in 1835.



11-11-11

11-11-11

11-11-11

11-11-11





29

the 'information' and 'communication' fields. The 'information' field is defined as:

...the study of the processes of information production, distribution, access, use and evaluation, and the study of the social, cultural, economic and political contexts in which these processes take place. (p. 10)

The 'communication' field is defined as:

...the study of the processes of communication production, distribution, access, use and evaluation, and the study of the social, cultural, economic and political contexts in which these processes take place. (p. 10)

The 'information science' field is defined as:

...the study of the processes of information production, distribution, access, use and evaluation, and the study of the social, cultural, economic and political contexts in which these processes take place. (p. 10)

The 'information studies' field is defined as:

...the study of the processes of information production, distribution, access, use and evaluation, and the study of the social, cultural, economic and political contexts in which these processes take place. (p. 10)

The 'information research' field is defined as:

...the study of the processes of information production, distribution, access, use and evaluation, and the study of the social, cultural, economic and political contexts in which these processes take place. (p. 10)

The 'information studies' field is defined as:

...the study of the processes of information production, distribution, access, use and evaluation, and the study of the social, cultural, economic and political contexts in which these processes take place. (p. 10)

The 'information science' field is defined as:

...the study of the processes of information production, distribution, access, use and evaluation, and the study of the social, cultural, economic and political contexts in which these processes take place. (p. 10)

The 'information studies' field is defined as:

...the study of the processes of information production, distribution, access, use and evaluation, and the study of the social, cultural, economic and political contexts in which these processes take place. (p. 10)

The 'information science' field is defined as:

...the study of the processes of information production, distribution, access, use and evaluation, and the study of the social, cultural, economic and political contexts in which these processes take place. (p. 10)

The 'information studies' field is defined as:

...the study of the processes of information production, distribution, access, use and evaluation, and the study of the social, cultural, economic and political contexts in which these processes take place. (p. 10)